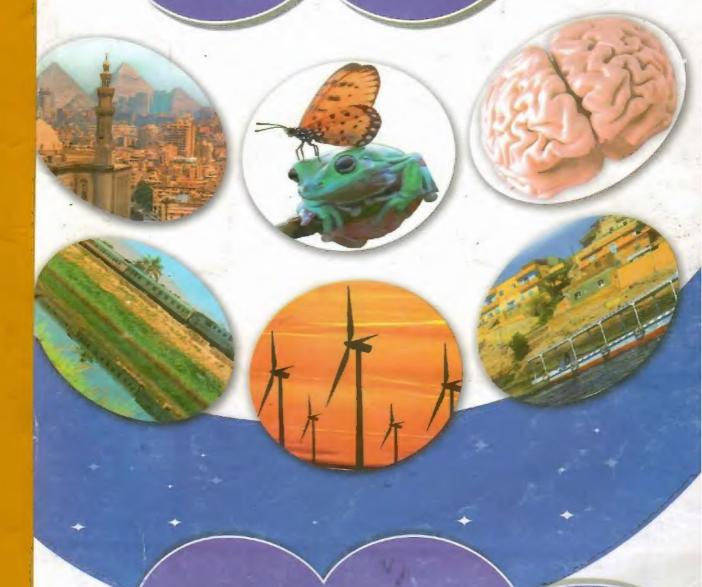




علامة تجارية مسجلة

السعر

70



First Term

Index

| ←Theme 1 | ✓ I discover myself |
|------------|--------------------------|
| ∠ Unit 1 | ✓ What can I do? |
| ≝ Unit 2 | ✓ Plants and animals |
| ≝ Unit 3 | ✓ My world |
| ≤ Review 1 | ✓ Non-fiction Reader: |
| | Coral Reefs |
| ≤ Theme 2 | ✓ Myself and others |
| ≤ Unit 4 | ✓ City and country |
| Vnit 5 | ✓ Resources in our world |
| ≤ Unit 6 | ✓ Let's work |
| Review 2 | ✓ Project |
| The Reader | ✓ Khayameya Summer |

Unit 1) What can / %

In this unit I will

- understand important systems in my body.
- learn about my brain.
- form and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.
- read about our senses.
- practice when to use capital letters.
- choose and write a title for a text.
- plan activities for a summer camp.

Scope and Sequences

Vocabulary: body systems: bone, blood, heart, lungs, muscles,

skeleton, stomach, swallow

Language : Mom wants to tidy the lounge.

Capital letters: English, Egypt, Braille

Reading : A text about senses

Writing : Choosing a suitable title for a text; a paragraph about a

healthy, lifestyle; notes to plan activities

Speaking : A dialog about physical and creative activities

Listening : Interviews with children talking about senses; information about Paralympic athletes

Life skills : Self-management: eating healthily, living a healthy life

Respect of diversity: differently-abled people

Values : Appreciation of science

Tolerance

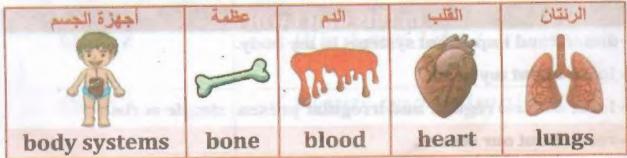
Issues and : Preventative and therapeutic health challenges Non-discrimination issues

Lesson 1

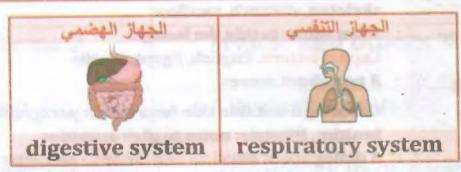
Hw

My body

جسمي







New vocabulary:

| air | K sla | breathe | يتنفس | oxygen | اکسچین |
|---------|--------------|-----------|--------------|---------|---------|
| chew | يمضغ | energy | طاقة | pump | يضخ |
| liquid | سائل | nutrients | عناصر غذائية | protect | بحسي |
| special | خاص م | need | يحثاج | organs | اعضاء |
| change | يغير ا يتغير | around | هول ا | strong | قوي |
| lift | يرفع | turn | سفلي | through | من خلال |





Definitions

| bone | hard pa | rts inside a human or animal that make up its fi | rame. عظمة |
|-------------|----------|--|-----------------|
| blood | thered | liquid that is sent around the body by the heart | . ea |
| heart | theorga | in in your chest that sends the blood around you | ur body. قلب |
| lungs | the two | organs in the chest with which we breathe. | رنتان |
| muscles | tissues | in the body that can tighten and relax to producent. | e عضلات |
| skeleton | the fran | ne of bones supporting a human or animal body | هیکل عظم |
| stomach | an orga | oin the body where food is digested. | معدة |
| energy | the pow | er and ability to be physically and mentally act | dlis. طاقة |
| nutrients | anyisub | الية stance which we need to live and grow | عناصر غذا |
| oxygen | a colorl | ess gas that we breathe to live. | اکسجین |
| digestive s | ystem | the organs in your body that digest food. فنمن | الجهاز اله |
| respiratory | system | the organs whick help you breathe. | الجهاز الت |

Important Prepositions & Expressions

| change into | يتحول الي | make up of | يتكون من |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|-----------|
| breathe in | ينتفس (الهواء) | attach to | يلتصق في |
| go to | يذهب الي | make strong | يجعلقوي |
| pass to | ينتقل الي | make move | يجعليتحرك |

Language notes

✓ make + object + adjective / infinitive

جعل (ياتي بعدها المقعول وصفة او مصدر الفعل)

- ✓ Doing exercise makes us healthy. ave ₺
- √ The bones make us move.
- ✓ My dad made me happy. He bought me a new bike.

to + infinitive (یاتي بعدها مصدر الفعل)

- ✓ I go to the market to buy bread.
- ✓ I train hard to join the race.

Reading

Listen and read:

1. Digestive system الجهاز الهضمي

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.



تستخدم جهازنا الهضمي عندما تأكل ونشرب. تمضغ الطعام ونبتلعه ، ثم يذهب إلى معتنا. في المعدة ، يحول سائل خاص الطعام إلى طاقة وعناصر غذائية نحتاجها في أجسامنا

الجهاز التتقسي 2. Respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

تستخدم جهازنا التنفسي عندما نتنفس. نتنفس الهواء من خلال أنفنا ، ويذهب إلى رنتينا. في الرنتين ، يتم تمرير الأكسجين الموجود في الهواء إلى الدم. يضغ قلبنا هذا الدم حول أجسامنا.

3. Bones and muscles الظلم و العضلات

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.



يتكون هيكانا العظمي من جميع عظام الجسم. هذه تجطنا أقوياء وتحمي الأعضاء. ترتبط العضلات بعظامنا ، وهي ترفع وتقلب العظام لتجعلنا نتحرك

Do you know?

There are about five litres of blood in the human body. يوجد تقريبا خمسة لترات دم في جسم الانسان .

To be active in the day, we need a good diet, plenty of water and enough sleep. Children aged 7 - 12 need eleven hours of sleep a night.

Practice Exercises

- 1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
- 1. We use our system when we eat and drink.
 - b. respiratory c. skeleton a. digestive
- food, then it goes to our stomach. 2. We chew and ...
 - a. breathe
- b. smell

c. swallow A 7 d. run





3. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and b. nutrients 4. We use our respiratory system when we a. eat b. smell c. breathe d. walk 2. Listen and complete: 1. We breathe in air through our AoCS..... 2. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the 3. Our heart f. Mf...... this blood around our body. 4. Our5 Manda is made up of all the bones in body. 3. Read and complete from the box: pumps digestive Muscles skeleton 1 Our S. We .. LA sp. V is made up of all the bones in our body. 2 M.o. S. 6+8.57 are attached to our bones. 4 We use ourd. in the system when we eat and drink. 4. Choose the correct answer: 1. We use our (respiratory - digestive - nervous - skeleton) system when we eat and drink. 2. We (chew / drink - run - play) food in our mouth. 3. We (watch - run - swallow / cut) food through our esophagus. 4. When we swallow food, it goes to our (liver - lungs - heart - stomach) 5. In the stomach, a special (gas - juice - liquid / sand) changes the food into nutrients. 6. We need (nutrients - air - water - gas) to make us grow. 7. We use our respiratory system when we (eat - breathe - drink - sleep), 8. We breathe in (water - juice - air - sand) through our nose. 9. The air we breathe goes to our (liver - heart - brain - lungs). 10. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (blood - muscles feet - eves). 11. Our (lungs - heart - liver - brain) pumps blood around our body. 12. A (brain - lungs - skeleton - heart) is all the bones in our body. 13. Our skeleton protects our soft (organs-food - drink - nutrients).

Hw

- 14. (Lungs Heart Eyes Muscles) are attached to our bones.
- 15. Muscles lift and turn our bones to make us (eat move read think).

5. Read the passage and answer the questions :

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

| A. | Answ | er the | following | questions: |
|----|------|--------|-----------|------------|
|----|------|--------|-----------|------------|

- 1. Which system do we use to breathe?
- 2. Which organ is filled with air ?

B. Choose the correct answer;

- 3. Our heart pumps (water- juice- blood- oil) around our body.
- 4. Our (skin hair skeleton- lungs) is all the bones in our body.

6. Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences

- 1, are Muscles- bones- attached to our.
- 2. up of is made Our skeleton- all the bones.

Miss St. Jesus March T. a. Ch Expet to a Mary from the

- 3. around blood pumps Our heart- our body.
- 4. through in air We breathe- our nose

we by cathe trong at the

6. Complete the missing parts from the box:

Muscles move skeleton protect

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong andorgans.are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us.......

Lesson 2

حواسنا Our senses



New vocabulary:

| tongue | اللممان | enjoy | يستمتع ب |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| skin | الجلد | sweet | حلو الطعم |
| understand | يفهم | savory | مالح اميهر |
| information | مطومات | communicate | يتواصل |
| world | العالم | deaf | اصم |
| mean | يشي | difficulty | منعوية |
| feel | يشعر | complete | تكميلي |
| combination | خليط / مزيج | take in | بمتص |
| sign language | لغة الاشارة | blind | اعمي |
| kind | نوع | Spanish | لغة اسبائية |

Definitions

| senses | the five physical abilities to see, hear, smell, taste | and feel. حواس |
|---------------|--|-----------------------|
| sweet | having a taste similar to sugar, not bitter or salty. | حلو |
| savory | salty or spicy and not sweet in taste. | مالح |
| sign language | communicate with signs. | لغة الإشارة |
| versions | a form of something which varies slightly from ot of the same thing. | her forms اصدارات |
| code | a system signals which is used to represent some | thing. شفرة |
| combination | the mixture you get when two or more things are | mixed. مزیج / خلیط |
| Braille | a system of printing for blind people | لغة برايل |







حواسنا Our senses

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Think about where you are now. What can you see?

What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

Look at the photo. What can the child smell? What do you think he can feel?

نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لمساعدتنا على فهم العالم من حولنا. نستخدم أعيننا لنرى وأذاننا لنسمع. نشم بأنفنا ونتنوق بنسائنا ونشعر بجندنا. فكر في أين توجد الآن. ماذا ترى؟ماذا تستطيع أن تسمع؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت ونتلقي الكثير من المعلومات.انظر إلى الصورة. ماذا يستطيع أن يشم الطفل؟ ماذا تعتقد أنه يستطيع أن يشعر؟

What kind of food do you enjoy? Some foods are sweet, and some are savory. We taste lots of different kinds of food every day.

ما نوع الطعام الذي تحبه؟ بعض الأطعمة خلوة ، وبعضها مالح. نتذوق الكثير من أنواع الطعام المختلفة كل يوم.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

بعض الناس لا يستطيعون أن يروا أو يسمعوا ، لذلك لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل. يمكن للأشخاص الصم أو الذين يجدون صعوبة في السمع تعلم لغة الإشارة. إنها لغة كاملة ، مثل الإنجئيزية أو العربية أو الإسبانية ، وهناك إصدارات مختلفة منها حول العالم - تختلف لغة الإشارة في مصر عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

ثفة برايل هي شقرة يمكن للأشخاص المكفوفين أو الذين يجدون صعوبة في الرؤية استخدامه للقراءة. فيها مجموعات مختلفة من النقاط. يمكن أن تكون حرف أو رقم أو علامة ترقيم أو كلمة. يمكن للشخص الذي يقرأ أن يلمس النقاط لمعرفة ما تعيه. اخترع لويس برايل لغة برايل.





Practice Exercises

1. sight 2. taste 3. touch 4. smell 5. hearing 2. taste 2. taste 4. smell 5. hearing 2. taste 4. smell 5. hearing 6. touch 7. taste 8. touch 9. tou

2. Complete the following relatives from the but

chew speaks called sign

- 1. Yusuf Arabic and English.
- 2. We canand swallow food.
- 3. We have different kinds of Language.

3. Convertee the falle wing acrisences from the

hear eyes skin nase

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our tongue, and we can feel with our tongue, and we can

4. Chouse the correct musice

- 1. We have five (ears senses legs arms).
- 2. We can taste with our (nose eyes ears tongue),
- 3. We can (taste see -smell-touch) with our nose.
- 4. Sight is the ability to (see taste smell touch) things.
- 5. We can touch with our (hair skin cloth eyes). 1
- 6. I can hear with my ears. This is called (smell touch hearing sight).
- 7. Our senses help us to (understand stand band land) the world around us.
- 8. We can feel with our (teeth bone skin hair).
- 9. Our senses take (in on out off) a lot of information.

10. What (kid - code - kind - king) of food do you enjoy? 11. Ice cream is a (savory - salty - sweet - bitter) food 12. This food is very (sweet - sugary - candy - savory). It has lots of salt. 13. A (deaf - blind - clever - fast) person cannot see at all. 14. He's deaf. He can't (walk - eat - hear - see). 15. People who can't see or hear use (sign - sight - bite - light) language. 16. Sign language is a (compete - complete - complaint - carrot) language. 17. (Braille - John - Jack - Peter) is a code that the blind use. 18. Braille is a combination of (letters - numbers - digits - dots) 19. In Braille, the person can (smell - touch - hear - see) the dots. 20. Braille was (invented - cooked - discovered - baked) by Louis Braille. 5. Complete the missing parts in the following dialogue sign deaf Alimed: How many senses do we have? Dad : We have five senses. Ahmed: What do we use to smell things? : We use our Dad Ahmed: What do blind people use to read? : They use ... Braille Dad : Do people use sign language? Ahmed : Yes, they do. Dad five senses / touch - skin / smell - nose / see - eyes / taste - tongue aday de spirit de constitución de servicio A TOTAL CONTRACT AND ALL TOTAL CONTRACT AND ADDRESS AN

Punctuation marks

علامات الترقيم

| * We use capital letters at the beginning of: | |
|--|-----|
| تخدم الحروف الكبيرة في بداية الاتي : | - |
| 1 Proper names: اسم العلم (الانسان) | |
| Mi - Mona - Ahmed - Samy - Jasmine - Haneen - Hala | 134 |
| 2 Cities and countries: | |
| gypt - Cairo - Giza - France - Paris - London - England | ь |
| ايام الاسبوع 3. Days of the week : | |
| Saturday - Sunday - Monday - Tuesday - Wednesday - | |
| Thursday - Friday | |
| 4 Pronoun (I) is always capital: I ضمير الفاعل | |
| ✓ I go to school to learn. | |
| 5 Months of the year: | |
| January - February - March - April - May - June - July - | |
| August - September - October - November - December | |
| 6. At the beginning of the sentence: في بداية الجملة | |
| We use the respiratory system to breathe. | |
| With languages and nationalities: اللغات والجنسيات | |
| nglish - Arabic - Spanish - French - Chinese | |
| punctuate the following sentences: | |
| O described to the second seco | |
| Lican speak english well. | |
| 2 ahmed goes to paris every year. | |
| 3 have my exams in january. | |
| 3 have my exams in january. 2 Touis braille invented the code. | |
| 2 Touis braille invented the code. | |
| bla HainVente the Code | |
| 5 omar doesn't go to school on friday. | |
| i live in aswan in egypt. | |
| - And it hopings in the design of A Fr. P. 11 F. | |
| vusuf speaks arabic and english. | |
| o my teacher is called mrs heba. | |
| only tenentel to cutten into neoni | 4 |



Lesson 3

Language ق المخ







cerebrum



cerebellum



brain stem

New Locabulary .

| lounge | صالون | choices | اختيارات |
|----------------|-------|------------|----------|
| tidy | پرتب | thoughts | افكار |
| smile | يبتسم | memory | دُاكِر ة |
| disappointed — | محبط | movement | حركة |
| creative | مبتكر | balance | توازن |
| paint | يلون | tired | مثعب |
| control | يتحكم | hemisphere | نصف المخ |
| remember | بتذكر | kitchen | مطبخ |
| join | يريط | problem | مشكلة |

Definitions

| lounge | the room in a flat that is used for relaxin | صالون g and guests. |
|--------------|---|---------------------|
| disappointed | unhappy, sad | محبط |
| creative | giving unusual ideas. | مېتكى |
| brain | the organ inside the head that controls of | our body. |
| cerebrum | the front part of the brain. | مقدمة المخ |
| cerebellum | a large part at the back of the brain | (مخيخ) مؤخرة المخ |
| brain stem | The central part of the brain. | جذع المخ |
| thoughts | ideas or opinions. | افكار |
| memory | the ability to remember. | ڏاکرة |
| hemispheres | halves | انصاف |







Reading

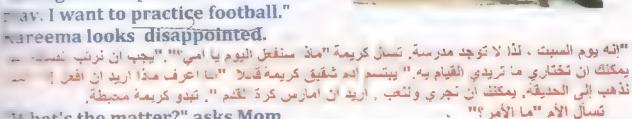
It is Saturday, so there's no school. What are we doing today, Mom?"

isks Kareema.

We have to tidy the lounge. Then . yu can choose what you want to do." says Mom.

Nareema's brother Adam smiles. "I - now what I want to do!" he says.

Let's go to the park. We can run and



What's the matter?" asks Mom, I like the park. "Kareema answers. "But I want to do something reative this afternoon. I would like to draw or paint a picture. Adam goes to the park every week."

كريمة تجيب "أحب الحديقة". "لكنني أريد أن أفعل شيئًا أبداعيًا بعد ظهيرة اليوم. أود أن أرسد أو حري صورة. يذهب أنم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع.

Kareema always does drawing!" says Adam.

" يقول آدم "كريمة ترسم دانماً إ".

S'om smiles. "Ithink we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can iraw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge."

تبنَّسِم أمي. "أعتقد أنه بمكنتا جميعا ان نكون سعاء اليوم. دعد تذهب الى الحديقة. يمكننا ان تلعب هـ.. ويمكننا أخذ أقلام الرصاص والورق معًا. يمكنك الرسم في الحديقة ايضا. ولكن أولا ، هيا ترتب الصد

Read again and circle

- 1. Mom wants to tidy the (lounge / kitchen).
- 2 Adam wants to (draw / run) in the park.
- Rareema wants to do something (happy / creative).
- 4 At the park, the children can (play /draw / play and draw).
- 5 The family will tidy (after / before) they go to the park.







Did you know?

هل كنت تعرف؟

Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make. The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.



يتحكم مخنا في كيفية تحركنا ، وما نتنكره ، والخيارات التي نتخذها فالمناطق الثلاثة الربيسية للمخ هي مقدمة المخ والمخبخ وجدع المخ ، ولهم جميعا وظالف مهمة .

The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories.

تتحكم مقدمة المخ في حواسنا واقكارنا وكيف تتحدث ونكرياتنا

The cerebellum controls movement and balance. The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.

يتدكم المخيخ في الحركة والتوازن. ويربط جذع المخ إلى جزنيين المخ.

There are two halves, or hemispheres, in our brain. The left hemisphere is important for maths, science, and solving problems.

هثاك نصفان ، او نصفي الكرة المخي ، في مختا.

التصف المخي الابسر مهم للرياضيات والعلوم وحل المسائل الحسابية.

We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

ستخدم النصف المخي الايمن في الأنشطة الإيداعية مثل الفن والموسيقي.

The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body, and the right hemisphere controls the left side of the body

يتحكم النصف اليسار في الجانب الايمن من الجسم والعكس صحيح .

More people use their right hand to write with . Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

يستخدم الكنير من الناس اليد اليمني في الكتابة ويعض الناس الذين بكتبون باليد اليسري ميدعين وفتائين .

Practice Exercises

1 Result tomplete the text with the words below:

main cerebellum stem choices

Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the we make. The three hard areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain have important jobs.



2. Choose the common more in

- 1. We have to (study tray rainy candy) the lounge.
- 2. We can play and run in the (park bark beak peak). X
- 3. I want to (smell taste hear practice) football in the park.
- 4. He's very sad. He's (glad delighted disappointed pleased)
- 5. What's the (meter matter manner mutter)? -I feel sad/
- 6. I want to do something (old bad creative carrying) and unusual.
- 7. I would like to draw or (paint point pant pit) a picture.
- 8. Let's (tidy tidies tidied tiding) the lounge.
- 9. Our (heart lungs liver hrain) controls how we move.
- 10. The brain has three (man main moon mean) areas.
- 11. The cerebrum controls our five (senses movements eating drinking).
- 12. The cerebellum controls our (senses movement \(\frac{1}{2} \) eating drinking) and balance.
- 13. The brain (root leaf stem bud) joins the cerebrum and the cerebellum.

3. Read and complete the text with the words bei

draw happy

too. But first, let's tidy the lounge."

it. Resultific passage and answer the questions.

I'm Jasmine. Every week, I go to the swimming club. I sometimes go with my Mom. I can swim very well. I train hard because I have a swimming competition next month. My brother, Mohammed likes tennis. He walks to the tennis club every day. He can draw very well. Once he drew a picture of his dad. His dad liked the picture and decided to buy him pretty colors.

My dad is a clever engineer and my mom is a good housewife. She makes delicious cakes. I like my parents very much.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1. How often does Jasmine go to the swimming club?
- What did Not in the grant of the year of the week
- Property Company



The Present Simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form:

تكوينه

هو التصريف الاول للفعل:

I, We, You, They + inf.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + Verb + s, es, ies

- ✓ I play sports every Friday.
- √ They go to school by bus.
- ✓ We study English, Maths and Science at grade 4.

He / She / It (singular مفرد) verb+ (s, es, ies)

- √ He plays football every Friday.
- ✓ She goes to school by bus.
- ✓ Mazen studies English, Maths and Science at grade 4.

When the verb ends in (o, ss, sh, ch or x), we add es to the yeab.

(goes - passes - washes - catches - mixes)

When the verb ends in (consonant + y) we omit (y) and add (xs).

(try - tries) - (cry - cries) - (fly - flies)

But when the verb ends in (vowel + y) we add (s) to the verb.

(play - plays) - (say - says) - (delay - delays)

- ✓ He plays football every week.
- ✓ She goes to the cinema every Monday.
- ✓ A bird flies in the sky.

استفائم شرس : عرامانا عدالا أنا عالاً

- 1. When we talk about routines:
- I usually run in the every morning.
- 2. When we talk about facts:
- The sun gives us heat and light.
- 3. When we talk about permanent situations:

عنهما ليحب عن رولين يومي

(+ 4000 ())

عسب أتعدب عربا حفالق

(Facts)

عندما سحدت عن مواقف دايمية

(prest france cont set or entropense)

Payer Sylvania Thomas The Salvan Thomas Thomas The Salvan Thomas Thomas

Hobby - football / play - park / score - goals / team - eleven / exciting

Unit 1

دائما

غالبا

4. When we talk about repeated actions: عندما نتحدث عن أحداث متكررة *We go to school every day. (repeated actions) Key words كلينت دالة عنى الزمن usually عادة always sometimes احياتا often never every (day) کل (پوم) Negative النقي I, We, You, They + don't + inf. He, She, It, اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf. ✓ I don't play sports every Friday . ✓ He doesn't play football every Friday. √ They don't go to school by bus. ✓ She doesn't goes to school by bus. Yes or No questions السوال به (هل) Do + I, we, you, they + $+ \inf$? Does + he, she, it, + inf.....? ✓ Do they study English? -Yes, they do. - No, They don't. ✓ Do you play tennis? -Yes, I do - No, she doesn't. √ Does he go to school on foot? -Yes, he does. -No, he doesn't. ✓ Does she play tennis?

-No, she doesn't. السؤال بأداة استفهام Question with question word ?....do + sub + verb + اداة استفهام *.... + does + sub + verb بنداة استفهام

How do you go to school?

What do they play?

-Yes, she does.

How does he go to school?

What does she play?

- I go to school on foot.

-They play tennis,

-He goes to school on foot.

-She plays tennis.

Verb (to be) in the present simple

He / She / It (singular مفره) is
You / We /They (plural عبد) are

1. I'm a doctor.

2. He is a doctor.

3. We are doctors.

Negative

 $am \longrightarrow am \ not / ls \longrightarrow ls \ not \ (lsn't) / are \longrightarrow are \ not \ (aren't)$ 1. I'm not a doctor 2. He isn't a doctor. 3. We aren't doctors.

Yes or No garstious

Is.....?

Are....?

✓ Is he a doctor?

✓ Are they doctors?

السوال بهل

- Yes,is. / No,isn't.

- Yes,are./No,aren't.

- Yes, he is.

- No, they aren't.

Verb (to have) in the present simple

He / She / It (singular مفرد)

has

I / You / We / They (plural have

1. He has a car. 2. I have a car. 3. They have a car.

Negative

has -- doesn't have/

have --- don't have.

✓ He doesn't have a car.

√ I don't have a car.

√ They don't have a car.

Yes or No Questions

Does.....have...?

السوال بهل Yes,does.\No-

-Yes,does.\No, ...doesn't.

Do...,...have.....? -Yes,do.\No,don't.

√ 1. Does he have a car? -Yes, he does.

✓ 2. Do they have a car? -No, they don't.

المزيد من تمارين القواعد في

Grammar Review

Practice Exercises

D. Chause the current them.

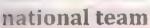
- 1. Ahmed (con . need t aren't) draw pictures.
- 2. We (travel traveling travels) to Paris every year.
- 3. Mona (go going) to school every day.
- 4. I usually (it a k drinks drinking) milk,
- 5. (Do Does Am) she cook lunch every day?
- 6. What (5) does are) Omar read on Mondays ?
- 7. (Yes, he is.
- 8. Where (do does is are) he go every day? ! He goes to work.
- 9. (No They I Slae) works in an office.
- 10. (They He she it) read English well.
- 11. (the the the the) they clever pupils? No, they aren't.
- 13. Ola (work working) to her house every week.
- 14. Omar and Ali (den't doesn't aren't) like science.
- 15. He (do does 18) hungry. 7
- 16. Hady always (do do b doing) her homework,
- 7. Tarek (hane has is) a new computer.
- 18. They (are 18 do) at home today.
- 19. We usually (has have -having) lunch at two pm.
- 20. He (kss does 15) tired.
- 21. He (chi cats cating) healthy food.
- 22. Ahmed (placed places is playing) football on Mondays.
- 23. Jasmine (doesn't -don't isn't) like bananas.
- 24. Hany never (stop = stopping stops) talking.
- 25. Sally (has = have = had) a new bike.
- 26. Does Loay have a bike? Yes, he (have has had) a bike .
- 27. (Do dos Did) Omar sometimes eat unhealthy food ?
- 28. (Ne Do Does) there many pupils in the class on Mondays?
- 29. Do you (has have had) a new mobile?
- 30. What | dees you you do do you) study at school?
- An adult brain (weigh we gos weighed) about 1400 grams.
- 32. Your brain (continue continues) to grow until you're 18.
- 33. On sleeping, your brain (goes go going) through all the memories of the day.

Lesson 4

العاب ذو الهمم (المعاقين)









parasports



competition



Olympics

| cup | کاس | opportunity | فر صة |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| Rio | ر يو | ath <u>lete</u> | رياضي |
| bronze | برونزي | gold medal | ميداية ذهبية |
| race | سباق | championship | يطولة رياضية |
| train | بتدرب | international | عالمي |
| dedication | تكريس الوقث | disabilities | inche) |
| second place | المركز التّاتي | champion | الطن إياضي |
| Paralympic | الولمعيات المعاقين | silver | هضه ا قضی |
| include | بشمل / يتضمن | level | مستوى |
| Brazil | البر از يل | age | سن 1 عمر |

Definitions

| Olympics | a set of international sports competitions that is held every four years. |
|--------------|--|
| athlete | a person who is very good at sports . |
| championship | a high-level competition to decide who is the best, in a sport. |
| disabilities | an ill condition that makes someone can't do the things that other people do. |
| Paralympic | an international sports competition for people with physical disabilities. |
| dedication | giving a lot of time and energy to something because it is important. |

Unit 1 Hi! Series Primary 4

· Wee Pimportant Expressions

| athletes with disabilities | 4 | take part in | يشارك في |
|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 100-meter race | سباق 100 متر | it takes place | تحدث |
| sitting volleyball | كرة الطائرة للجالسين | is held | تقام |
| | يستمتع بممارسة الرياضة | each time | کل مرة |
| get to this level | يصل لهذا المستوي | all over the wor | ld |
| | | | من كل اتحاء ال |

Reading text

* Listen and read. What three types of medals are in the text? What do you think they mean?

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.



Ava Avman Ahhas

الالعاب البار المبية هي مسابقة دولية للرياضيين ذوي الإعلقة. تقام كان اربع سنوات مثل الالعاب الولمبية ، وكام في بلد مختلف في كل مرة. رباضة المعاقبن هي مجال مهم في الرياضة ، ولدي مصر العديد من الرحضيين الذين وشاركون في هذه المسابقات.

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

ابية ايمن عباس بطلة سياحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاث مرات، كانت اول سياحة مصرية في اولمبياد المعطين في ربو عام 2016، وقد فازت بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية في العديد من البلدان المختلفه،



a Eathalla

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

مصطفى فتح الله عداء يشارك في سباقات 100 متر و 200 متر و 400 متر. لتحق بالهنتخب القومي في مصر عام 2006 . وشارك في العديد من الميدانيات الذهبية في بطولة العالم في العديد من الميدانيات الذهبية في بطولة العالم في نيرياندا.

-----ed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, -ere the team won bronze. He has played . h his team in Africa and Brazil and they we won many international competitions est Egypt.

يلعب احمد عبد الفتاح الكرة الطائرة في وضعيه الجنوس. سرت بي . . . للمعاهين 2016 ، حيث قار الغريق بالمبدالية البرونرية, ولعب مع درية الم الفريقيا والبرازيل وقاروا بالعبد من البطولات الدوليه لمصر



Long a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many portunities for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport they enjoy.

اً، نكون رياضيا بارالمبيا او اولمبيا يستعرق سنوات من التفاتي والعمل الجاد. لا يمكن لاي شخص الوصول الي هـ . ولمن هداك الحديد من القرص للجميع للمساركة والاستمناع بالرياضة التي يستمنعون بها.

- · Read again and choose yes or no
- : The Paralympics is held every year.

- Yes No
- People from all over the world can take part in the Paralympics. Yes
- ? The Paralympics is held in the same place.

No

Na

You need to work hard to take part in parasports.

- No Yes
- 5 No Egyptian female athlete took part in parasport competitions. Yes No

Practice Exercises

Listen and circle the answer from a . b , c or d: الإستناع في فهاية الوحدة

- 1. The Paralympic Games is a/ancompetition.
 - a. national
- b. international
- c. local
- d. dally
- 2. The Paralympic Games is for athletes with
 - a. disabilities b. abilities
- c. powers
- d. minds
- 1. The Paralympic Games is held everyyears.
 - a. three
- b. five

- c. seven
- d. four
- 1. Many Egyptian athletes part in the Paralympic Games.
 - a. look
- b. take

- c. get
- d. place
- 2. Complete the Military in himself COLUMN TWO
- 1. Athletes with (disabilities abilities able disable) win many medals for Egypt.





- 2. Paralympics (gives takes plays have) place every four years.
- 3. Paralympics is (caught held built taken) in a different country each time.
- 4. Egypt has many (athletes doctors teachers vets) who take part in international sports competitions.
- 5. We have many athletes take (apart party part parts) in Olympics.
- 6. (Parasports flying landing writing) is an important area in sports.
- 7. Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming (hero champion teacher pupil).
- 8. Aya was the first (male female toddler adult) Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016.
- 9. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze (metals medals mills meetings).
- 10. Olympics is held in many different (homes'- streets countries areas) .
- 11. Mostafa Fathalla is a (swimmer player boxer runner) who takes part in100-meter race.
- 12. He joined the (nation national nations crew) team in Egypt in 2006.
- 13. He has won a gold medal in the (World city country village)
 Championship.
- 14. Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays (standing sitting stopping rowing) volleyball.
- 15. Olympic athlete takes years of (decision deny delay dedication) and hard work.
- 16. Not everyone can get to this (stand level stage box) to take part in Olympics.
- 17. Really, I have fun (giving taking doing losing) sports.
- 18. We should encourage athletes who have (disabilities power mind brain).
- 19. At school, pupils should have (fun funny fan form) learning English.
- 20. With (lazy hard funny idle) work, you can get to good level.

| | he fo | ollowing dialogu | ie from 🔠 📉 in | the box: |
|--|---|--|---|--------------------|
| npall | | Paralympics | bronze | parasport |
| | : D | o you like watchi | ng Paralympics G | ames? |
| Wazen | | es, I do. | | |
| | : W | hich Sost ball | .do you watch? | |
| wazen | Si | tting volleyball. | | |
| | : D (| o you know Ahme | ed Abdel Fattah? | |
| | : Yes, He took part in the 2016 Rio | | | |
| The same of | : Н | e has won | medal th | ere. |
| | | ving passage and | | in100-meter, 200- |
| and. Bei incation and are are ma are are ma are as port Answer What de Y.M. M.M. What sh Choose the control of the sh athalla has Zealand. Everyone sh | edals ng a nd h ny o they the f o you hould corre s won | s, including gold in Paralympic or ard work. Not exportunities for exportunities for exportunities for exposition about Modella and the control of the contr | in the World Charles Olympic athlet veryone can get everyone to take ons: stafa Fathalla? compic athlete? constitution of (dedication - later of cathlete) | enjoys. |
| | | Your favo | urite sport | |
| | ******* | | A | ****************** |
| | | 6 100 107 107 114 110 110 110 110 110 110 | | ., |
| *** *** *** *** *** *** *** | | | | |
| *************************************** | *** *** ** | K 888 840 858 901 880 850 640 682 888 | CO1 NOTES #46 416 761 | |
| *************************************** | | 4 4 1 1 6 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | ****************** |

Lessons 5 & 6

Writing paragraphs كتابة فقرة انشائية

A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences). A paragraph contains a topic sentence, main (body) sentences and a conclusion sentence.

تتكون الفقرة من عدة جمل (3-8 جمل). تحتوي الفقرة على جملة افتتاحية وجمل اساسية (جسم) الموضوع وجملة ختامية.

- 1. The introduction sentence (topic sentence): جملة افتتاحية This sentence is first. It introduces the topic.
- 2. The main sentences : الْجِمَلُ الأساسية These sentences are in the middle of the paragraph. They give more information.
- 3. The conclusion sentence : الجملة الغتامية This sentence is last. It finishes the paragraph.

√ Writing Tip! 🕮

When you choose a title غنون for a text, you need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way. You don't need any extra اضافي or unimportant information. It's a good idea if you can make it furning or interesting, too.

Read the texts and choose the best title. There are two titles you don't need

Do sports every day!

Tips for a healthy diet

How to start an exercise routine

Unhealthy habits

Why you need to eat fruit

1. How to start an exercise routine

(title)

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

2. Tips for a healthy diet

(title)

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat, and fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

3. Unhealthy habits

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.



* Read this paragraph. How many sentences does it have?

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well.

Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

- * ?: ...d again and follow the instructions:
- 1. Underline the introduction sentence in red.
- 2. Underline the conclusion sentence in blue.
- 3. Underline the main sentences in yellow.



Find out

| II fi | t's good to exercise regularly, but it's important to practice other activities or your mental health. Write a paragraph to show the importance of |
|----------|--|
| b | alancing between physical and mental exercises. |
| | *************************************** |
| | |
| | 1341-(|
| | *************************************** |
| | *************************************** |
| | ###################################### |
| | 14444-44111 |
| | 151(/)) |
| | 44 1 1 0 0 1 4 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |

Effectivity the text. What does meetal activity do to your brain?

Summer camp!

To lead o healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, point, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

Come to our three-day summer camp. Play sports and learn new skills. Make friends and have fun!

Practice Exercises

1. Read the passage and answer the questions:

₩B

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.

We should eat fresh fruits and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with proteins include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat.

We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these includes nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.



Practice test

A. Listening

| J. Listei | n and circle t | he correct an | swer from a | ı, b, c or d : | Ď |
|---|---|---------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. We us | e our respira | tory system w | hen we | ************** | |
| a. 6 | eat | b. breathe | c. drink | d. speak | |
| 2. We br | eathe in air t | hrough our no | se, and it go | es to our | |
| a. s | stomach | b. brain | c. heart | d. lungs | |
| 3. Our | , | pumps this | blood aroun | d our body. | |
| a. e | eyes | b. skin | c. heart | d. skeleton | |
| 4 | ar | e attached to | our bones. | | |
| | | | | | |
| a. 1 | Muscles | b. Blood | c. Ears | d. Noses | |
| | Muscles n and comple | | c. Ears | d. Noses | |
| 2. Liste | n and comple | ete: | | d. Noses | |
| 2. Lister | n and comple aralympic | ete: | s an interna | tional competition. | |
| 2. Lister 1. The P 2. Paras | n and comple aralympic ports is an im | ete: | s an interna | tional competition. | |
| 2. Lister 1. The P 2. Paras 3. Aya A 4. Aya A | n and comple aralympic ports is an im yman Abbas i yman Abbas I | portants a swimming | s an internation in sypt Cup | tional competition. sports. times. | |
| 2. Lister 1. The P 2. Paras 3. Aya A 4. Aya A | n and comple aralympic ports is an im yman Abbas i yman Abbas I | portants a swimming | s an internation in sypt Cup | tional competition. | |

We use our senses every day to help us understand the...... to hear. We around us. We use our eyes to see and our to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue and we can feel with our

I the the direction is a second in comment the partition before.

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing. Perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat, and fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Eating the right food is very (bad - important - unhealthy - weak).

| | Primary 4 H | li! Series _ 1st | Term |
|---|---|--|---|
| B. Answer th | rink lots of water in (o ne following question dn't you eat too much | ns: | not) days. |
| 4. What are th | e healthy choices? | *************************************** | |
| - | The | e Reader | |
| A second service | - Transfer | | |
| 1. Zeinab wa 2. Zeinab wa | s excited in the secon nted to visit Grandfa | nd week of the sui | mmer holiday. () |
| (t) above | THE RESERVE | -1-1-p-0-1 | |
| 3. Zeinab wa | sin the sec | ond week of the s | ummer holiday. |
| a. bore | | c. pleased | |
| 4. Zeinab wa | nted to visit her | | o o |
| a. motl | ner b. grandfat | her c. father | d. sister |
| | <i>C.</i> V | Vriting | |
| i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i | | WHITE THE PARTY OF | |
| | | | |
| a. drink | b. drinks | c. drinking | d. drunk |
| | read Engli | | # #* |
| 3. They | b. He at ho | c. she | đ. it |
| a. are | b. is | | d. done |
| 4. He | hungry | | w. work |
| a. do | b .does | c. is | d. did |
| | | | |
| 1. smell - <u>He</u> - | - his - can - nose - w | ith. | |
| 3. are - Muscl | es- bones - attached | to - our. | ***************************** |
| ****************************** | | | . *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** * |
| - | Ow | r body | |
| * Cuiding alon | | body | |
| * Guiding elem | | ha abeletee 1 | |
| uigestive – ea | t – respiratory – breat | ne – skeleton – bone | s – muscles – attatch |
| *************************************** | 51 781 588 555 659 144 191 848 814 693 149 814 8884 | 44 9 5 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 | 181884440014881048844887948476188114 |
| - | | | |



Listening text

Lesson 1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Listen and complete:

We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

Lesson 4

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Model exam unit 1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

Listen and complete:

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions. Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

Unit 2 Plants and animals

In this unit I will.

- understand the classification of animals.
- learn about the importance of size in the animal world.
- form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs.
- read about invertebrates.
- use contrasting ideas.
- make a habitat report.

Objectives

| | | Objectives | | |
|--------------------------------|----|---|--|--|
| Vocabulary | 5 | animals: amphibian, arachnid, bat, bird, fish, invertebrate, mammal, reptile, species, vertebrate; beak, fin, fur, gill, scales; crab, dragonfly, grasshopper, jellyfish, octopus, snail, squid Comparative and superlative adjectives; adverbs | | |
| Language | 14 | An Asian elephant is smaller than an African elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. Some invertebrates can swim very well. | | |
| Reading | : | Texts about animal classification; a text about animal sizes | | |
| Writing | : | Practicing dictionary skills; writing about advantages and disadvantages; a habitat report | | |
| Speaking | * | A True or False game; discussion about colors; description of a picture | | |
| Listening | : | Facts about animals; facts about under the sea world | | |
| Life skills | | Critical thinking: considering advantages and disadvantages Collaboration: pair work about a micro-habitat | | |
| Values | : | | | |
| Issues and challenges | | | | |
| Integrated cr curriculum to | | A | | |

Unit 2 Hi! Series Primary 4

Lesson 1

Vertebrates

زعاتف

الفقاريات









مثقار

vertebrate

fins

gills

beak









ضفدعة



scales

ostrich

crocodile

frog

fur

New vocabulary:

| backbone | عمود فقري | cold-blooded | دم بارد |
|------------|------------|---------------|-----------|
| mammal | حيوان ثنيي | warm-blooded | دم داڤئ |
| reptiles | زواهف | feed | يطعم |
| amphibians | البرمانيات | give birth | ite |
| turtle | ملحقاة | lay eggs | تضع بيض |
| bat | خفاش | habitat | موعان |
| seal | عجل البحر | survive | يعيش . |
| toad | ضفدع | except | ما هدا |
| whales | الحيتان | moist | رطب |
| humans | اليشير | freshwater | ماء عنب |
| feathers | ريش | saltwater | ماء مالح |
| wings | اجنحة | types = kinds | انواع |
| smooth | تامم | bones | عظلم |
| hard | منانيه | shapes | اشكال |
| different | مغتلف | nuts | مكسرات |
| skin | جند | spend | يقضي وقت |
| oxygen | اكسجين | wetland | ارش مبتلة |
| seeds | بنور | vertebrates | الفقاريات |



Definitions

| vertebrate | an animal that has a spine. |
|------------|---|
| mammal | any female animal gives birth to babies. شيي |
| amphibian | an animal, such as a frog , which lives both on land and in water . |
| moist | slightly wet, especially in a good way. رطب / ندي |

Important Expressions

| feed with | يغذي علي | keep warm | يحتفظ بالدفئ |
|------------|----------|----------------|---------------|
| give birth | 212 | in addition | بالاضافة الي |
| lay eggs | تبيض | take in oxygen | يمتص الاكسجين |
| spend time | يقضي وقت | made of | مصنوع من |

Reading

* Listen and read :

@Vertebrates

الفقاريات

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five different types of vertebrates.



الفقاريات هي حيوانات لها عمود فقري. هناك خمسة أنواع مختلفة من الفقاريات.

1. Mammals

الثدييات

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

للثديبات شعر أو فرو على أجسامها. هم من ذوات الدم الدافئ بغنون أطفالهم بالحليب ومعظمهم يندون أطفالهم ولا يضعون البيض. البشر ثديبات تعيش معظم الثديبات على الأرض ، وتعيش في البحر ، مثل الحيتان وعجل البحر الخفافيش هوالثدبي الوجيدالذي يستطيع الطيران.

2. Reptiles

الزواحف

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

الزواحف لها دم بارد. هذا يعني أنه يتعين عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت في الشمس للتدفئة. معظم الزواحف لها أربع أرجل ، ما عدا الثعابين ليس لها أي أرجل. ليس لديهم شعر أو قراء، لديهم قشور. تضع الزواحف أيضاً بيض. تعيثر Unit 2 Hi! Series Primary 4

معظم الزواحف على الأرض. وستطيع للبعض أن يعيش في الأنهار أو البحر ، مثل السلاحف ، لكنهم يخرجون إلى الأرض ليضعوا بيضهم.

3. Amphibians

البرمانيات

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a molst habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

تستطيع البرمانيات أن تعيش على الأرض وفي الماء ، لكنها تحتاج إلى الماء أو موطن لتبقي على قيد الحياة. هم من نوات الدم البارد ،مثل الزواحف ويضعون البيض. ومع ذلك ، فإن البرمانيات ، مثل الضفادع و ضفادع الجبل ، تضع دائمًا بيضها في الماء ، ولديها جلد ناعم ، وليس قشور, بمكنهم امتصاص الأكسجين عبر الجلد والرئتين.

4. Fish Sand

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats – saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

تعيش الأسملك في الماء وتأخذ الأكسجين من خلال خياشيمها: فهي لا تستطيع تنفس الهواء. هم من نوات الدم البارد ويضعون البيض. لديهم أيضًا قشور و تستخدم الزعانف لتحريكها. هنك الآلاف من الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك في جميع المواطن المائية - المياه المالحة والمياه العنبة والأراضي الرطبة.

5. Birds

الطيور

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair.
All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay
eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't.

تعد الطبور من ذوات الدم الدافئ ، لكن ليس لديها فرو أو شعر كل الطبور لها ريش وكلها لها أجنحة. تضع الطبور بيضًا صلباً. يمكن لمعظم الطبور الطبران ، لكن البعض لا يستطبع ذلك.

They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

الطيور مناقير، وهي مصنوعة من العظام. تختلف أشكال مناقيرها الأنها تأكل طعامًا مختلفًا: بعض الطيور تأكل اللحوم، والبعض يأكل المكسرات والبعض يأكل البنور.

Did you know ?

A species of animal is a group of animals that are the same or very similar. There are millions of species of animals on Earth – and scientists discover new ones every year i

قصيل الحيوان هو مجموعة من الحيوانات المشاية او لها نفس الخصائص. وتوجد ملايين الفصائل علي كوكب الارض ويكتشف الطماء قصائل جديدة كل عام .



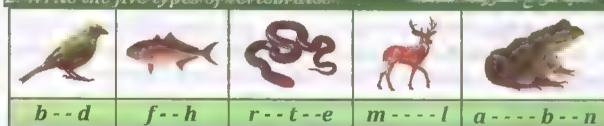
Student's book Exercises

1. Read and complete from the box

| bats | beaks | cold-blooded | fins | gills |
|--------|-------|--------------|-------|-------|
| scales | seeds | warm-blooded | water | moist |

- 1 Humans,.....and whales are all mammals.
- 2 Mammals are.....and they feed their babies milk.
- 3 Reptiles and amphibians are.....
- 4 Reptiles havenot fur or hair.
- 5 Amphibians have smooth skin and live in habitat.
- 6 Amphibians always lay their eggs in
- 7 Fish breathe by taking in oxygen through their
- 8 Fish have scales and use their to move.
- 9 Birds have which are hard and made of bones.
- 10 Birds eat meat, fruit, insects, nuts and

2. Write the five types of vertebrates.



3. Complete the tuble with the unimals .

| bat | crab | dragonfly | frog | grasshopper |
|---------|---------|-----------|------|-------------|
| octopus | ostrich | shark | 2 | squid |

| فقري Vertebrate | غیر فقری Invertebrate |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| | |
| | |
| | |

Practice Exercises

discionate tipes essenting them نص الاستماع في اخر الوحدة 1. Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have or hair. b. skin a. fur c. wing d. beak 2. All birds have m. burniss h. skin c. feathers d. blood 3. Most birds can but some can't. b. talk c. read d. flv a. sing b. seeds c. stones d. water 2. Listen and complete: 1. Amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay 2. Frogs and always lay their eggs in water. 3. Amphibians have smooth skin, not 4. Amphibians can take in oxygen through skin and their Read and complete the text with the words below milk Rats lav

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies withand most of them give birth to their babies and don't eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, live in the sea, such as whales and seals. are the only mammal can fly.

F. Read and complete the text with the words below: scales freshwater gills eggs

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills. They can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay They also have They use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, and wetlands.

the two entangers

- 1. Vertebrates are animals with (wood metal backbone).
- 2. (Mammals Madams Machines) have hair or fur on their bodies.
- Mammals feed their babies with (water juice milk).

- 4. Most mammals (take -
- 4. Most mammals (take give put) birth to their babies.
- 5. (Birds Mammals Reptiles) don't lay eggs.
- 6. Humans are (mammals birds reptiles).
- 7. Bats are the only mammal that can (swim fly sing).
- 8. Reptiles are (cold-blooded warm-blooded hot-blooded) animals.
- 9. (Snakes Crocodiles Lizards) have no legs.
- 10. (Frogs Fish Bats) have scales.
- 11. (Reptiles Fish Amphibians) can live on land and on water.
- 12. Amphibians need water or (moist mast mist) to survive.
- 13. Fish take in oxygen through their (tales fins gills).
- 14. Fish use (gills fins scales) to move.
- 15. All birds have (feathers fur hair).

College is the parameter and anarous (live questions

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mamma can fly.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food: some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

- A. Answer the following questions:
- 1. What do mammals feed their babies ?
- 2. What do birds eat?
- B. Choose the correct answer:
- 3. (Birds- Mammals- Amphibians) lay eggs.
- 4. Mammals have (scales- hair wood)or fur on their body.

bearings the following words.

- 1. cold-blooded Reptiles- are.
- 2. water can on land and on Amphibians live.

| 3. ta | ke - gills - ii | n - <u>Fish</u> - th | rough - oxy | gen - their. | | |
|--------------|---|---|---|-------------------------|--|---|
| 4. bi | rds - <u>All</u> - fed | athers- ha | ve | | | |
| 8. W | rite a para | igraph of | HETY (5) | l] words (| ın : | Replifes |
| | cold-blood | led / spend - | - sun / have | – scales / lay | – eggs / sn | ake - type |
| | *************************************** | | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | ***************** | ****************** | |
| *** | ***************** | | | *********************** | | 181 842 841 865 545 145 145 445 448 |
| | *************************************** | | | | ****************** | *************************************** |
| 4014 | >14>1414 | , | | | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | *************************************** |
| Charles E.A. | ************************************** | | ************** | | 4,44,441,441,444,44, | **************** |
| | Ifte a para | agraph of | F1F 1 Y (5) | o j words e | on : | Fish |
| | fish- water | / breathe – | gills / fins | - move / lay | - eggs / he | ave - scales |
| 4 0 0 1 | 4 D | **************** | . 4 11 7 14 4 7 1 4 4 1 1 1 1 1 7 7 7 1 7 1 | | | 121121111111111111111111111111111111111 |
| *** | | 4010010010121401101401 | | | | *************************************** |
| | | h 4 h 4 h 4 h 4 h 4 h 4 h 4 h | | ****************** | | *************************************** |
| *** | | | | | | ******************** |
| *** | | *************** | | ***************** | | *************************************** |
| 400 | | F . P 4 | ************** | | | |
| 111 | ****************** | | | | | |

Lesson 2 Language

| R | V e | ٥١ | w vi | ocabulary |
|---|-----|----|------|-----------|

| TO TO TO THE BUILD IN THE | | | |
|---------------------------|---------|-------------|---------------|
| size | مقاس | hummingbird | الطائر الطثان |
| natural | طبيعي | Cuba | كويا |
| world | العالم | enormous | ضغم |
| ostrich | تعامة | leopard | |
| African | المريقي | scientists | العلماء |
| Asian | اسيقي | Blue whale | المعوث الازرق |
| chameleon | الحرياء | Whale shark | حوت القرش |

Reading

THE COURT IN

أقرأ عن الحجم في عالم الحيوان ، ابن يعيش اكبر حيوان في العالم ؟

Big and small

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones!

في العالم الطبيعي ، هذاك بعض الحيوانات الضخمة ، وبعض الحيوانات الصغيرة!

The biggest animal on land is a mammal: the African elephant.

The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.

أكبر حيوان على الأرض هو حيوان تديي: الفيل الأفريقي. القيل الأفريقي أكبر من الفيل الأسيوي.

The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

أكبر حيوان في العالم هو أيضًا حيوان ثديي ، لكنه يعيش في البحر. إنه الحوت الأزرق ، ويمكن ان يصل طوله ني 30 متزا. في المعتبقة ، هم اكبر الحيوانات على الإطلاق التي عاشت على الأرض!

The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

قرش الحوت هو أكبر سمكة في العالم. إنه أصغر من الحوت الأزرق ، ويبلغ طوله حوالي 12 مترًا.



The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

أصغر طائر هو طائر نحل الطنان الذي يبلغ طوله حوالي 5.5 سم. ويعيش في كويا. أكبر طائر هو النعام. يمكن أن يصل ارتفاعه إلى 2.5 متر النعام أسرع من النمور ، لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران.

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just30 millimeters long!

في عام 2012 ، اكتشف العلماء حرباء صغيرة في مدغشش بعتقد الناس أنها أصغر زاحف في العالم ، حيث ببلغ طولها 30 ملمَيس فقطا

But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

لكن حتى هذا أكبر من ضفدع في بابوا غينيا الجديدة. يبلغ طوله 7 ملليمترات ، لذا فهو أصغر الفقاريات التي LALIA SIS

Read again and answer 1. Are African and Asian elephants the same size? 2. How big is a whale shark? 3. Can an ostrich fly? 4. When did scientists find a tiny chameleon?

* Did you know

Ants are small, but they are extremely strong I For their size, they are much stronger than humans.



الثمل صغير ، لكنه قوى للغاية إ بالنسبة لحجمهم ، فهم أقوى بكثير من البشر.

Practice Exercise

1. Complete the dialogue with words from the box

: It eats green

jungle fruits elephant plants Ahmed : What's the biggest animal on land? : The African Ali Ahmed : Does the elephant live in the desert? Dad : No . it doesn't . Ahmed : Where does it live? : It lives in the..... Dad

: What does it eat?

- 1. In the (made false natural fancy) world, we have different animals.
- 2. In the deepest water , there are (big tiny fat thin) animals. We can't see them.



Ahmed

Dad



- 3. The biggest animal on land is a (mammal male female bird) .
- 4. The blue whale can be up to 30 meters (tall short high long).
- 5. The bee hummingbird is (up to about on) 5.5 centimeters long.
- 6. Ostriches are faster than leopards, but they can't (fly run jump hop) .
- 7. Scientists (made invented discovered raised) a tiny chameleon in Madagascar
- 8. Ants are small, but they are extremely (bad strong weak fat)!
- 9 The biggest animal (on in at down) land is a mammal.
- Description For their (color age size eggs), ants are much stronger than humans,

the passage and answer the questions:

The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

- A. Answer the following questions:
- 1. Is the most enormous animal a mammal?
- 2. Where does the blue whale live?
- 1. Choose the correct answer:
- 3. The whale shark is (bigger smaller taller) than the blue whale .
- 4. The whale shark is a kind of (fish birds animals).
- . Rearrange the following words:
- 1. bird hummingbird the bee The smallest -is.
- 2 elephant the- elephant is than The African bigger Asian
- 3. a mammal biggest on is The- animal -land

| | 511 3 72 | - | |
|------|---|---|-------------------|
| | | | The second second |
| | THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN 2 IN COLUMN | | |

blue - biggest/live - sea / it - enormous / it - mammal / eats - animals

- > The camel is taller than the horse.
- > The snake is longer than the spider.
- > The horse is faster than the hippo.
- Mona is older than Maha.
- عند المقارنة بين شخص واكثر للتفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة st / est / iest ونضع قبلها the
- > It is the nicest trip I have ever been to.
- Adel is the tallest boy in the class.
- > Mona is the oldest girl of her friends.
- > The elephant is the heaviest animal in the forest.

Spelling:

- الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف e نضيف لها r / st فقط .
- √ nice nicer than the nicest
 - > The eagle is nicer than the spider.
 - > The horse is larger than the donkey.
 - توجد صفات قصيرة نضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة er / est .
- √ fat fatter than the fattest big bigger than the biggest
 - > The camel is bigger than the horse.
 - > The snake is thinner than the crocodile.

- → الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف y تحول الي حرف i ونضيف ثها er / est .
- √ lazy lazier the laziest heavy heavier the heaviest
- 1. The hippo is heavier than the horse.
- > 2. The parrot is noisier than the eagle.

Practice

1. (ostrich – fast – leopard)

- The ostrich is faster than a leopard.
- 2. (a bee hummingbird small an ostrich)
- 3. (ants strong humans)

- 4. (snake thin crocodile)
- 5. (hippo heavy horse)

B. Long Adjectives الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين شخصين نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة more / less ونضع بعدها

- > The snake is more dangerous than the spider.
- > The hippo is less intelligent than the camel.
- Mona is more beautiful than Maha.
- My car is less expensive than Ahmed's.

Practice

1. Now make tentences

- 1. (elephant enormous hippo)

 The elephant is more enormous than the hippo.
- 2. (giraffe interesting horse)

014100016010 D41141 06504041177777777841187470 610 447 D47 10 667 44444

- 3. (cat exciting dog)
- 4. (rabbit useful fox)
- (spider dangerous snake)
 - عند المقارنة بين شخص واكثر نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة the most / the least .
 - The snake is the most dangerous animal.
 - > The cow is the most useful farm animal.
 - Reading is the most important hobby in my life.
 لاحظ ان : توجد صفات طویئة تعامل في المقارنة مثل الصفات القصیرة او الطویئة مثل :
 - √ narrow narrower the narrowest
 - √ narrow more narrow the most narrow
 - My flat is narrower than yours.
 - My flat is more narrow than yours.
 enough + n (کافي (پاتي بعدها اشم * I have enough time to go out.
 as + عنه + as کافی (پاتي بعدها اشم * Ali is as tall as Badr .

Practice Exercises

to Characte the correct innover

- 1. English is (easy easiest easier the easiest) than Arabic.
- 2. Football is (least the most-most more) exciting sport nowadays.
- 3. Science fiction films are the (most-more most less) boring comedies.
- 4. This pizza is (thin thinner thinnest the thinnest) than the sandwich.
- 5. Russia is the (large larger largest small) country in the world
- 6. Diana is (old older as old as the oldest) than Mike.
- 7. Titanic is the (more less most little) exciting film I've ever seen.
- 8. Cathy is (most as more) intelligent than Joe.
- 9. I didn't enjoy the comedy. It wasn't funny (enough as -less too).
- 10. "Is Dave (tall tallest the tallest taller) than George?
- 11. Monkeys are the (funny funnier funniest fun) animals in the world.
- 12. Germany has got the (bigger biggest big tiny) population in Europe.
- 13.Mr. Jones is (fat fatter the fattest fattest) than Mr. Smith.
- 14. The elephant is more (enormous big large) than the hippo.
- 15. The snake is (most more many) dangerous than the spider.
- 16. The crocodile is scary but the spider is (scary scared scarier).
- 17. The hippo is (heavy heavier heaviest) than the horse.
- 18. The tiger is strong, but the lion is (stronger strong fat).
- 19. Omar is the (tall taller tallest) pupil in class.
- 20. Mona is (than then the) fattest girl in class.
- 21. The horse is the (faster fast fastest) animal in the farm.
- 22. The cow is (the most more most) helpful animal.
- 23. The parrot is the most (nice beautiful cute) bird.
- 24. A frog in Papua New Guinea is the (biggest / smallest) vertebrate.
- 25. The (biggest / smallest slowest) bird is the ostrich.

smoner bigger

- 1. An Asian elephant is.....than an African elephant.
- 2. A blue whale is.....than a whale shark.
- 3. An ostrich is.....than a bee hummingbird.
- 4. A frog in Papua New Guinea isthan a chameleon in Madagascar.

Lesson 3

Invertebrates اللافقاريات

كابوريا



قنديل البحر



اخطبوط



حيان البحر



crab



octopus

squid

قو قعة



جرادة





snail



dragonfly



grasshopper



spider

Night spirit industry

project sadly find out choose invertebrates good idea internet find out information insects others

of course مشروع www بحزن cold-blooded پکشند العراء بختار protection اللافقاريات like = such as enough الانترانت laugh پکتشف on the internet think حشرات amazing الإخرون know Line well done بنحرك research

arachnid

تليفون خاوى

طيعأ واق (لفظ للتعجب) دوى الدم البارد الحماية مثل كاف بضحك على الانترنت رو قائد مدهش يعرف احسنت بحث

jump

move

finish

cell phone

العثكيبات

Definitions

| invertebrates | an animal with no spine. | اللافقاريات | |
|---------------|--|-------------------|--|
| crab | a sea animal covered by a shell. | الكابوريا | |
| jellyfish | a sea animal with a soft body. | قنديل البحر | |
| octopus | a sea creature with a soft body and eight tentacles. | اخطبوط | |
| squid | a sea animal with a long body and ten arms. | حيار البحر | |
| snail | a small creature with a round shell. | فوقعة | |
| dragonfly | a large insect with a long thin brightly coloured body. | | |
| grasshopper | a plant-eating insect with long back legs that can ju | الجراد .ump | |
| spider | a small insect with eight thin legs which catches of insects in a web. | her العنكبوت | |
| arachnid | a group of insects with four pairs of legs, which inc spiders عناكب , scorpions عناكب . | lude العنكبيات | |

Reading

*Read, think, and say

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. What do you think an invertebrate is?

الذفه التحده الله عدود ففي والذا تعقد اللاففار ، ال يكون ال

*Read the text. What does Sami find out?

'Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!' said Sami sadly. I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose.'

قال سامي بحزن "أبي ، لا اعرف ماذا اكتب لمشرو عي!" لا بد لي من اتعرف على يعض الحبواتات ، لكسي لا اعرف أي الحيوالات أختال

'Why don't you write about invertebrates?' asked Sami's dad. More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates.'

سال والد سامي "لماذا لا تكتب عن اللافقاريات؟". اكثر من 90. من جميع الحيوانات من اللافعاريات.

'Good idea!' said Sami. 'Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?'

قال سامي: "فكرة جيدة!" "هل يمكنني البحث على الانترنت بسرعة لمعرفة المعلومات ، من غشلك!" "Of course.' said Dad،

Oh wow!' said Sami. 'I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies.

أوه ، واو إقال سامى. لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات اللافقاريات باردة الدم. انهم يعيشون على الارص وفي الماء. يعض اللافقاريات ، مثل سرطان البحر ، لديها قشرة صلبة للحماية البعض الاخر ، مثل فنديل البحر ، لديه اجسام ناعمة Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.'

بمكن لبعض اللانفاريات ان تسبح جيدا ، مثل الاخطبوط و الحبار.

'Do you have enough information for your project? laughed Dad. ضحك أبي هل لديك مطومات كافية لمشروعك؟

'Oh yes!' said Sami. 'Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast.'

قال سامي. "تعم بالتاكيد!" "انتظر ، لقد وجدت المزيد! بعض اللاقعاريات ، مثل القواقع ، لها أصداف صلبة وتتحرك ببطء سديد جد ، البعص الاخر اسرع اليصوب يمكن أن يطير بسرعة كبيرة.

Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter!' Did you know that the spider is not an insect? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.

الحسرات اعتما من اللافقاريات، لديهم سنة ارحل اعتقد ان الحرّاد هم اكثر المحترات روعة. سمكنهم الققر اكثر من مترع هل تعلم ان العنكبوت ليس حشرة؟ له 8 ارجل ويسمى العكبيات، يمكن الا يشعرك بسرعه كبيرة جنا.

'Well done!' said Dad. 'Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please?'

قال ابي " حسنت!" هل انتهيت من حداك " هل بمكاني استعادة هاتفي الخلوق الان ، من قضلك؟

- 1. Read the facts and choose.
- 1. Invertebrates are (warm-blooded / cold-blooded).
- 2. They (can / can't) all swim.
- 3. (All / Some) invertebrates have a hard shell.

2. Real with and answer

- 1. What invertebrates does Sami think are the most amazing?
- 2. How did Sami find information?
- 3. What other ways could Sami find out information?
- 4. Name 3 facts you know about invertebrates from the text.

Practice Exercises

1. Listen and complete

- 1. Invertebrates are-blooded.
- 2. Crabs have a hard for protection.
- 3. Jellyfish havebodies.
- 4. Some invertebrates can very well.

can grassnoppers arachnid jump

3. Chouse the 16 rull unswei

- 1. I have to find (m on out) about some animals.
- 2. I write for my (pocket project ticket) at school.
- 3. (Invertebrates Vertebrates Whales) don't have spines.
- 4. I look on the (internet interact interrupt) to get more information.
- 5, (On In Ot) course, dad. I can do it.
- 6. Invertebrates are (cold-blooded hot-blooded warm-blooded) animals.
- 7. Crabs have a hard (shall shell shawl) for protection.
- 8. (Crabs -crocodiles Jollyfish) have soft bodies.
- 9. Squids and octopuses can (run hop swim) very well.
- 10. (Suais Dragonties Birds) have a hard shell and move slowly.
- 11. (Octopuses Dragonflies Squids) can fly very fast.
- 12. The grasshopper has (four five six) legs.
- 13. The spider is called an (araclinid architect arch).
- 14. I look on the internet through my (sell cell sail) phone.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid. Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast.

Insects are also invertebrates. Spiders have eight legs. The grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.

- & Ancoper the tollowing quescions.
- 1. What do we call spiders?
- 2. What do the crabs have for protection?

- B. Choose the correct answer:
- Spiders have (four-five-eight) legs.
- . Snails are very (slow-fast-quick) animals.

| William Company of the Company | Name - Income |
|---|---|
| grasshopper - jump / octopus - stx / squid - swin | m / dragonfly – fly / snall - slowest |
| 7 (************************************ | |
| | |
| *************************************** | 4 |
| | |
| *************************************** | |
| *************************************** | *************************************** |
| Gramma | |
| Adverbs | اثظرف |
| المل. Regular adverbs: | يستخدم الظرف لوصف الحدث و يأتي بعد الة الظرف المنتظم |
| adjective + l | y |
| slowly) - (quick | quickly) |
| easily) - (heavy heavi | اذا انتهت الصفة بـ (حرف ساكن + y) نحذا |
| + ساكن) نضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ly) | $(nappy \longrightarrow nappily)$ |
| (beautiful beautifully) - (car | ful carefully) |
| > The snail moves slowly. | , |
| > The elephant walks heavily. | |
| The girl sings beautifully. | |
| Irrogular advanta | |
| Irregular adverbs: | الظرف غير المنتظم |

| adjective | المعني | adverb | المعتى |
|-----------|--------|--------|------------|
| good | جيد | well | طريقة حيدة |
| fast | سريع | fast | مير عد |
| hard | صعب | hard | غر معيم |
| high | عالي | high | Like |

- The squid swims very well.
- > The horse runs very fast.
- > The dragonfly can fly very high.

Practice Exercises

Find and whaterline the edverbs

- 1. Some invertebrates can swim very well.
- 2. Some invertebrates, such as snails, move very slowly.
- 3. Dragonflies can fly very fast.
- 1. A spider has 8 legs. It can move very quickly.

easily - fast - slowly - well

- 1. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food......
- 2. The octopus can swim very.....
- 4. Some spiders can hide very.....

1

- 1. Ahmed walks to school very (slow-slowly-quick).
- 2. The dragonfly can fly very (high-heavy-careful) in the sky.
- 3. Mona reads the text (careful-carefully-beautiful).
- 4. I usually answer the questions (easily+ easy- slow).
- 5. I do (good-nice-well) in the final exam.
- 6. I look on the internet (quick-slow-quickly).
- 7. The elephant walks (heavily-heavy-big) on the bridge.
- 8. The girl is singing (beautiful-beautifully-pretty) in the concert.

Lesson 4

Art الرسم

amounts and

New vocahulary:

scientists
nearly
different
brightly colored
flowers
colors
bright
attract
insects
carry
pollen
reproduce
primary colors
secondary colors
mix

| - | MINOUNG |
|----------------|-------------|
| فلريبأ | shades |
| مقتلف | for example |
| زاهي | color wheel |
| ر هور | add |
| ألوان | darker |
| لامع | lighter |
| يجنب | interesting |
| عشرات | coral reefs |
| يحمل | hide |
| حبوب اللقاح | predators |
| بىكائر | in addition |
| الإثوال الإساس | prey |
| الالوان المفرع | warning |
| Lilly | poisonous |
| | |

| | كموات |
|---|-----------------|
| | dille |
| | علي سبيل المثال |
| | عجلة الالوال |
| | بضيف |
| | اغمق لوناً |
| | المتح لونا |
| | شيق |
| | شعب مرحاثیه |
| t | بطثبئ |
| | حيوادك مقترسه |
| | بالصدفه الي |
| | فريسه |
| | تحثير |
| | ممام |
| | |

Definitions

| pollen | a powder produced by the male part of a flower. | | |
|-------------|--|--------------------------------|--|
| reproduce | to produce a copy of something. | يتكاثر | |
| coral reefs | an area of coral, the top of which can so seen just above the sea. | ometimes he الشعب المرجانية | |
| predators | an animal that hunts, kills and eats oth | er animals. حیوانات مفترسهٔ | |
| prey | an annual that is hunted and killed for animal. | food by another فرسنة | |

Readina

*Local and say. What volors can you well."

Read and say. Why do flowers have bright colors?

اقرا و قل لماذا للزهور ألوال زاهية؟

"Read thertiset What does Sann find out

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

يعتقد العلماء أن هذاك ما يقرب من 400000 نوع مختلف من النباثات. تحتوى معظمها على ازهار باتى بالوان كتبرة مختلف. نجمت الارهار الزاهية الحشرات التي تحمل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة الي زهرة اخرى. هذا بسعد الزهور على التكاثر.



Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between.

الألوان الأساسية هي الاحمر والاصفر والازرق. لا يمكننا صنع هذه الألوان عن طريق مزج الوان الحرى. نصنع ألوانا ثانوية عن طريق مزج الالوان الاساسية الثلاله يكميات مختلفة. يمكننا صنع اللون الاخضر والبرتقالي والارجواني وجمع الظلال بيتهما.

For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

على سبيل المثال ، بمكننا مزج اللوندن الاحمر والاصغر لصنع اللون البرتقالي. يمكن عمل الالوان الدانوبة عن طريق مزج الالوان الاساسية الاغرب اليهم على عجله الالوان. اضافة اللون الاسود الى اللون يجعله اعتق ، واضافة اللون الابرش يجعله اللتح.

Read and listen:

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly-colored and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and have different colors, so the fish can hide from the bigger fish.



In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored . Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous .



DELLES

| People sometimes de | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| think are warm? Whi | cn ones ao you تا ان الني تعتقد انها دافيه؟ ا | nink are colar wr. په" او "بار دهٔ". ما هی الالو ا | الهاس احبان الالوان بانها "داك |
| | | | |
| *************************************** | | ************ | |
| *44.144.144.056 | ======================================= | 431445445555555555555555555555555555555 | *************************************** |
| *********************** | **************** | 411471794411111111111111111111111111111 | 416 berrit erritting beereingbestebesch |
| *************************************** | | | |
| | Practice | e Exercises | |
| 1. Listen and circle | e the correct a | inswer from a . | b,cord: |
| 1. There are lots of in | nteresting thing | s to see | the sea. |
| a. above | b. under | c. beside | d. outside |
| 2. Some | _ | | |
| | b. sharks | | d. lions |
| 3. Fish can hide in co | | | |
| | b. animals | | d. predators |
| 4. Bright colors can l | _ | | |
| a. poisonous | b. sweet | c. soft | d. hard |
| 2. Read and comp | lete the text w | with the words l | pelow: |
| | | mixing | <u>pink</u> |
| | | | make these colors |
| byoth | | | |
| mixing the three pr | | | |
| green, orange, pur | | i | n between. |
| 3. Choose the corr | ect word: | | |
| 1. Flowers have ma | ıny different (e | rallers - colors - | collars). |
| 2. The bright flowe | rs attract (ani | mals – fish – inse | ects). |
| 3. Insects carry (po | ollen – polar – p | oopular) from oi | e flower to another. |
| 4. Pollen helps flov | vers to (repres | ent - reproduce | - reduce). |
| 5. (Primary - Secon | adary - Prep) (| colors are red, ye | ellow and blue. |
| 6. We can make ne | w colors by (fi | xing – boxing – n | nixing) primary color: |
| . We can mix red | and yellow to r | nake (white – bl | ack – orange). |
| 8. Purple is a (prin | nary – seconda | ry – preparatory |) color. |
| A D 11 / 1 | | | |
| 9. Red is a (primar | y - <mark>second</mark> ary · | - preparatory) c | olor. |

- 10. Adding (white ~ yellow-black) to colors makes them darker.
- 11. Adding white to colors makes them (heavier lighter darker).
- 12. (Coral Caller Collar) reefs have bright colors.
- 13. Predators (feed eat help) on their prey.
- 14. (Dark Black Bright) colors can be a warning.
- 15. The (prey pray gray) is the animal that is caught and eaten.
- 16. The (predators fishers travellers) hunt and eat other animals.
- 4. Read the passage and answer the questions :

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

| | lors are primary colors? | |
|-------------------|--|---|
| 2. Is purple | a primary color ? | (************************************* |
| B. Choose th | ne correct answer : | |
| | ikes colors (lighter-darke | , |
| | range by mixing red and (i paragraph of FIFTY (| |
| this - | - wheel / blue – primary / orai | nge – red and yellow / black – darker |
| 11451655464156244 | *************************************** | *************************************** |
| | ****************************** | *************************************** |
| | *************************************** | *************************************** |
| | | *************************************** |



Lessons 5 & 6

Writing: linking words and phrases ورقه شجر

تربة زراعية



زنيق الماء









جدور

soil

water lily

leaf

seeds

stem

roots

New vocabulary

| flat | مسطح | hunt | يصطاد |
|---------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| surface | سطح (الماء) | on one hand | من ناحية |
| difficult for | صعب لـ | on the other hand | من تاحية اخري |
| float | يضقو | look pretty | ييدو جميلا |
| reach | يصل | environment | البينة |
| unusual | شاذ | adapt to | يتاقله مع |
| pollinate | ينقح | on top of | على قمة |
| in addition | بالإضافة الي | macro-habitat | مو طن کیپر |
| spread | ينتشر | micro-habitat | موطن صغیر |
| cover | يغطي | echolocation = | تحديد موتع بصدي الص |

Readina

environment/

أغرا عن ربيق الماء , هيف ينتيف جدر الرابيق مع بيسه لا

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have: a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake.

سَمو معظم النباسة في التربة الزراعية. وبالرغم من ذلك ، قال بعض النباتات تَمُو فِي الْمَاءِ ، مِثْلُ زُلْبِقِ الْمَاءِ. لَهُمْ ورقَّهُ كَبِيرةَ مُسْطَحَةُ عَلَى سَطِّحَ الْمَاء وساق طويل يصب الى قاع البحيرة.

They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large are<mark>a. On one hand, thi</mark>s can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can









make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

لديهم أزهار زاهية الالوان وهم بصنعون البذور التي تطفو على الماء. بالاضافة الى ذلك ، تنتشر جذورها تحت الماء ويمكن ان تغطي مساحة خبيرة جدا. من ناحية ، قد ببدو هذا جميلا ، ولكن من ناحية أخرى ، قد يجعل من الصعب على الحيوانات والنباتات الأخرى ان تعيش تحت الماء.

- 1. What parts of a water lily are on top of the water?
- 2. What parts of a water lily are under the water?

Writing tip!

Use these words/phrases to link the sentences and ideas in your paragraph: مكنك استخدام هذه التعبيرات لربط الجمل والافكار في فقرتك .

> In addition; to add more information to the same idea.

بالإضافة الي

> However: use this to show a change in topic.

مع دلك

> On one hand ... On the other hand: these can show two different points of view on the same topic.

Write on one animal that can live on land and on water. Research more on how it adapts to be able to live in both environments. Use some of the phrases in the Writing tip! box

- **>**
- * Read the outline

In this unit you've learned about lots of plants and animals. When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.

لقد تعرفت في هذه الوحدة على الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات. عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعي ، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش معا في موطن. تحتاج الفقاريات واللافقاريات والنباتات بعضها البعض ونعمل معالليقاء على قيد الحياة.









Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands. A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

المواطن الكبيرة ، أو المواطن الشاسعة . هي القابات والصحاري والاراضي العلسية الموطن الصغير هو منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.

Practice Exercises

d. Complete the following dialogues from the box :

parrots animals What Loav Do you have a pet? Mazen : Yes, I do. Where do pets usually? Loay Mazen : At home or in flat. Loay • What are good pets? Mazen I think cats and dogs.about bird pets? LOav 1 1 7,273 The is so exciting.

| A | В |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The water fily | a. to survive |
| 2. Most plants | b. grow in water |
| . At made and plants need each other | C. are forests, deserts. |
| r. matru-natitats | d. grow in soil |

I. Choose the correct answer:

- 1. It's difficult (on at for) some animals to live in the desert.
- 2. Some pets (toke | see look) pretty
- 3. Most plants grow in (sand soil lake).
- 4. The water lily grows in (land water soil).
- 5. The water lily have a large, (tlat flatten fat) leaf.
- 6. Some plants have brightly (coloring colored colors) flowers.
- Some seeds (drop run float) on water.
- 8. The roots of water lily (spread put die) under the water.
- What (party parts roots) of a water lily are on top of the water.
- . Plants (adopt · grow adapt) to live in desert environment.
- 11. Plants work together to (survive die fly).
- 12. Macro- (home habitats flats) are forests, deserts, and grasslands.
- A micro-habitat is a (small big large) area such as a pond or a tree.

4. Read the passage and anser the questions

WI

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. However, bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night. They can fly very fast at night because they can see using a special skill called echolocation. In addition, bats are helpful to humans and the environment. On one hand, large numbers of bats can be noisy and messy. On the other hand, they are helpful to farmers because they pollinate plants and eat large amounts of harmful insects.

| 1. Why are bats unusual? | ns of natimul insects. |
|---|--|
| 2. When do bats hunt for fo | ad 2 |
| | UU 1 |
| 3. How do bats see at night | |
| 4. How do bats help farmer | s ? |
| Workhoo | k Exercises |
| | ges and disadvantages of having a pet? |
| Advantages | Disadvantages |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| 2. Choose a micro-habitat. Write a | report about the vertebrates. |
| invertebrates and plants that liv | |
| * Vertebrates : | 7 |
| 117177777417747774774474747474747474747 | |
| ************************************** | |
| *************************************** | > < p. < p. < q. < < 4 > < 4 > < 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > 6 > |
| * Invertebrates : | |
| *************************************** | |
| | |
| | 2 |
| * Plants : | |
| | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, |
| P************************************* | |
| | |

| 3. Write two examples of each of these types of animals: |
|--|
| 1. Mammals : |
| M = 4 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 = 5 |
| |
| 2. Reptiles: |
| *************************************** |
| 3. Birds : |
| o. Dirus : |
| *************************************** |
| Ask and answer with a partner: |
| 1. Which vertebrates have gills? |
| *************************************** |
| 2. Which vertebrates lay eggs? |
| |
| 3. What is the biggest animal in the world? |
| 1 Which importable and the control of the control o |
| 4. Which invertebrate can fly very fast? |
| 7. Why do fish have bright colors? |
| |
| Self-assessment |
| 5 Check the boxes that are true for you : |
| |
| The anderstand the classification of animals. |
| 1. I can understand the classification of animals. 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs. 5. I can read about insects. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects. 6. I can use contrasting ideas. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs. 5. I can read about insects. 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives, 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects, 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative adjectives |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives, 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects. 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative adjectives or an adverb; |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects, 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative adjectives or an adverb; Humans can run fast but ostriches can run than humans. |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects. 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative adjectives or an adverb: Humans can run fast but ostriches can run than humans. Giraffes are |
| 2. I can learn about the importance of size in the animal world. 3. I can form and use comparative and superlative adjectives. 4. I can learn about adverbs, 5. I can read about insects, 6. I can use contrasting ideas. 7. I can make a habitat report. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative adjectives or an adverb; Humans can run fast but ostriches can run than humans. |

Practice Test

| | A. Listeni | ng | |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------|------------------------|
| | | in those a, tall | arth. |
| 1. Fish live in water | er and take in oxygen | through their | |
| a. east | 8 | c. lungs | d. scales |
| 2. Fish can't | | | |
| a. walk | b. drink | c. eat | d. breathe |
| | ooded and they lay | | |
| a. eggs | b. sweets | c. feet | d. legs |
| | of differen | | |
| | h. hundreds | c. thousan | ds d. millions |
| 2. Listen and con | | | |
| 1. There are nearl | y 400,000 different ty | pes of | |
| 2. Most of plants h | ave | | |
| 3. The bright flow | ers attract | *********** | |
| 4. The pollen help | s the flowers to | | |
| | B. Readii | ng | |
| | | inde their manual | familie l |
| bone | nuts | wood | shapes |
| Birds have beak | s , which are made of | **************** | Their beaks |
| | because they | | |
| eat meat, some ea | tan | d some eat se | eds. |
| 4. Read the passa | ige and answer the (| juestions : | |
| The smallest | bird is the bee hum | ımingbird, wl | ich is about 5. |
| | t lives in Cuba. The big | | |
| 2.5 meters tall ! 0 | striches are faster tha | in leopards, b | ut they can't fly.h |
| 2012, scientists dis | scovered a tiny chamel | eon in Madaga | iscar. People thinl |
| | reptile in the world, a ie world is also a mam | | |
| nigkest attititut III fi | te motta is gizo a mam | mai, but it live | s in the sea. it's the |

blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth! The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the smallest bird?

2. What is the smallest reptile in the world?



| 3. | (Horses-Ostriches-Lions | s) are faster | than leopards. | | | | |
|-----|--|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| | The (blue-red-green) w | | | | | | |
| | | The Reade | | | | | |
| 5 | A. Read and write T Tru | | | | | | |
| | Zeinab went to Grandfath | er by train. | | () | | | |
| Ľ | Zeinab's grandparents we | re pleased w | hen they saw Zei | inab. () | | | |
| ť | Prose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: | | | | | | |
| 3 | Zeinab went to Grandfather by | | | | | | |
| | a. plane b. taxi c. train d. bus | | | | | | |
| 4 | Zeinab's grandparents we | re | when they s | aw her. | | | |
| | a, bored b, sad | t c. pl | eased d. | nervous | | | |
| | | C. Writing | 7 | | | | |
| | Comment the consensation of | Sec. VEA | | | | | |
| | Ahmed walks to school ve | | | | | | |
| | | slowly | | d. good | | | |
| _ | I usually answer the ques | tions | **************** | U | | | |
| | a. easy b. | quick | c. easily | d. slow | | | |
| 3 | I look on the internet | ************ | A A SECULIT | | | | |
| | a. quick b. | slow | c. quickly | d. good | | | |
| 4 | The girl is singing in the concert. | | | | | | |
| | a. beautiful b. | beautifully | c. pretty | d. bad | | | |
| | Three the words to mak | | ulenies . | | | | |
| | take - gills - in - Fish - thro | ugh - oxygen | - their. | | | | |
| | TA (| | | | | | |
| | water - can - on land - and - on - <u>Amphibians</u> - live. | | | | | | |
| | | -4.0 224 200 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 00 | ******************* | ************************************** | | | |
| | L Write is paragraph of FWTY (50) include one | | | | | | |
| | | ertebrate | es | - | | | |
| - (| Guiding elements: | | | | | | |
| : | amphibians – water – birds – warm-blooded – reptiles – eggs – fish – gills | | | | | | |
| | *>>>> ********************************* | TE FFE TE TE TE TE TO F AT T AND | CFT 432 335 4C1 5C1 220 223 723 725 530 000 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

Listening Text Lesson 1

- 1. Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. Birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food: some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.
- 2. Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through skin and their lungs.

Lesson 3

1. Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.

Lesson 4

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly-colored and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and have different colors, so the fish can hide from the bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

Model exam

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills: they can through their gills: they can through they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

* Listen and complete:

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

In this invit I wil

- understand what makes a community.
- understand and use possessive forms.
- · learn about the history of Egypt.
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs.
- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt.
- read about the development of farming.
- learn about Egyptian folk music.
- make a tourist information guide.

| | | Scope and Sequence | | |
|-----------------------|-----|--|--|--|
| Vocabulary | 6 | my local area: community, neighborhood, citizenship history: dynasty, hieroglyphs, pharaoh, scribe governorates of Egypt, capital city music: clapping, ney, oboe, oud, qanun, rebaba, shabbaba simplements of the community of the | | |
| | | shabbaba, simsimeya, string instrument, wind instrument | | |
| Language | : | This is my neighborhood. It's mine. That's your bike. It's yours. Important dynasties ruled Egypt for many years. | | |
| Reading | : | A text about the history of ancient Egypt; texts about folk music and folk dancing | | |
| Writing | - | Describing your community; a paragraph describing folk music or dance | | |
| Speaking | - | Talking about where you live; group work to make a tourist information guide Children describing their communities; information about governorates; musical instruments | | |
| Listening | u | | | |
| Life skills | 1 | Respect for diversity: the different governorates of Egypt Communication: a tourist information guide | | |
| Values | : | Curiosity / Participation | | |
| issues and challenges | * 4 | National unity | | |
| Integrated cre | | | | |

Lesson 1

My community

مجتمعي

| New vocabulary | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| community | مجتمع | behave | يتصرف |
| tourists | سياح | important | هام |
| respect | يحترم | city | مدينة |
| together | معأ | village | قرية |
| the same area | نفس المنطقة | believe | يتقني |
| neighborhood | ڄيرة | kind | لطيف |
| mixture | خليط | fair way | طريقة عادلة |
| activities | اتشطة | powerful | قو ي |
| citizenship | مواطنة | helpful | متعاون |
| act | يتفاعل | sports club | نادي رباضي |
| civilisation | حضارة | weather | ملقس |
| include | يشمل / ينضمن | music | موسيقي |

Definitions

| community | a group of people have common interests, social or nationality. | group مجنمع |
|--------------|---|----------------|
| neighborhood | the people who live in some area. | جيرة |
| activities | the work of a group of people to achieve an aim. | انشطة |
| citizenship | the state of being a member of a country and have rights. | nny مواطنة |
| polite | hehaving in a way that is socially correct | مۇدب / |

Important Expressions

| for me | بالنسية لـــ | work hard | يمل بجد |
|--------------|--------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| part of | جزء من | act in a way | بتصرف بطريقة |
| good for | مفید اـ | behave in a fair way | وضرف بطريقة علالة |
| a mixture of | خليط من | at my sports club | في ناديي الرياضي |

Did you know? Egypt is one of the oldest civilizations on Earth.

It became powerful over 5000 years ago.

Reading

* Read, think, and say

- * What do you think a community is? Is it:
- 1. who you live with?
- 2. where you live?
- 3. the things you can do?
- 4. the things you think and believe?
- * My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.



المجتمع هو مجموعه من الاشخاص الذين يعيشون ويعملون معا في نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو اكبر من منزلك او عاملتك او جيرتك. انه مزيج من الاشخاص والامكن والالتبطة والافكار. يضم مجتمعي عاملتي واصدفاسي ومدرستي.



There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too.

ربما توجد اماكن مهمة في مدرنتك أو قريتك تزورها غالبا. يمكنك ايضا أن يكون لديك مجتمع هناك. بالنسبة لي ، أنا جزء من المجتمع في النادي الرياضي الخاص بي أيضا.

When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community. I am always polite and helpful at school, and at my sports club.

عدما تتصرف بطريقة جيدة لمجتمعك ، فهذه هي المواطلة الصالحة. هذا يعني الك تعمل بجد لتساعد الاخرين ، وتتصرف بطريقه لطيقة وعدله. المواطنة الصالحة هي جزء جيد من التواجد في المجتمع. أن دائما مهذب ومفيد في المدرسة وفي الثادي الرباضي.

Student's book Exercises

| 1 Read again and me | atch : |
|---------------------|---|
| A | B |
| 1. community . | a, behaving in a way that helps your society. |
| 2. neighborhood | b. a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas. |

- 3. citizenship
- c. the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live.
- 2. Read and complete from the box :

citizenship community neighborhood

Practice Exercises

1. Listen and complete

- 1. Ais a group of people who live and work together.
- 2. It is a of people, places, activities, and ideas..
- 3. It my family, my friends, and my school.
- 4. It is more than your house,, or your neighborhood.

2. Complete the following dialogue with the words below. formers pets village fruits

Heba : Where do you live ?

Ola : I live in a.....

Heba: Are there lots of trees and plants?

Ola Yes, there are.

Heba: What do grow there?

Ola : They grow vegetables and fruits.

Heba ; Do you like?

Ola : Yes, I do.

3. Choose the twirted inowe.

- 1. A community is a group of (animals people birds) who live and work together.
- 2. The houses and people who live near you are your (teachers doctors neighbors).

- 3. My community (includes reduces produces) my family, my friends and my school.
- 4. The (village city valley) is a place that has lots of cars and streets.
- 5. The (village city town) is a place that is full of trees and plants.
- 6. I am a (port part bird) of my community.
- 7. Milk is good (after for on) your health.
- 8. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is called good (citizenship championship neighborhood).
- 9. Good people work (herd hardly-hard) to help other people.
- 10. It's good to behave in a (fair far fear) way.
- 11. Pupils should work (alone together once) to achieve their aims.

4. Rearrange the following words:

- 1. always at school and helpful Lam polite.
- 2. sports club part of at my I am- the community.
- 3. is who live and a group together of people work A community.

I. Read the passage and answer the questions

I'm Maged. My family is very big. I live with my dad, mom, grandparents. I have three sisters and three brothers. My father works in a school. He's a good teacher. My mom is a doctor. She likes helping sick people. I have a big room. I always study English in my room. I do my homework every day. All the toys in the room are mine. I like my parents and my school. I'm in primary four. I like English and maths. I want to be a doctor when I grow up.

- · Inswer the following questions:
- i. How many brothers and sisters does Maged have?
- ... What's the job of Maged's father?

thoose the correct answer.

English and (science-maths-Arabic) are Maged's favorite subjects.

Maged's mom works in a (school-restaurant-hospital).

Grammar

| | Possusive: | pronou | NS LC | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------|
| Subject ضمائر الفاعل | Object pronoun ضمائر النفيول | | e adjective صفات ا | Possessive الملكية | |
| Не | him | his | 4 | his | ASIA |
| She | her | her | 18 | hers | ملكها |
| It | it | its | 4 | ****** | |
| You | you | your | গ্ৰ | yours | ماكاك |
| We | us | our | Li | ours | ملكنا |
| They | them | their | P# | theirs | ملكهم |
| I | me | my | | mine | ملكي |

He plays tennis.

وضمائر الفاعل تحل محل الفاعلي

I visited him vesterday.

ا ضمائر المقعول تحل محل المفعول.

This is my book.

ا صفات الملكية تاتي قبل الاسم المملوك .

* ضمائر الملكية تشير الى الملكية ولا ياتي بعدها الاسم المملوك. This pen is mine

* DA HE J. S.

- This is my shirt. It's mine.
- (a) It's their house, It's theirs,
- They are our books, They're ours,
- This is his car, It's his.
- This is her dress, It's hers,
- They are your shoes. They're yours.

Practice Exercises

- 1. This is my neighborhood. It's (yours / mine).
- 2. This is our school. It's (ours / theirs).
- 3. This is my cousins' house. It's (theirs / mine).
- 4. Those are Rasha's books. They're (hers / mine).
- 5. That is your bike. It's (theirs / yours).
- 6. These are Adam's shoes. They're (ours / his).

A. Choose the lateractions were

- 1. They're Aya's running shoes. They're (his hers ours).
- 2. It's Fares and Mostafa's neighborhood. It's (theirs his yours).
- 3. They're Adam's neighbors. They're (ours yours his).
- 4. It's my community. It's (mine hers his).
- 5. It's your house. It's (you your yours).
- 6. This is Mona's car. It's (she her hers).
- 7. These are my shoes. They're (me mine 1).
- 8. This is Ahmed's phone. It's (his he him).
- 9. We live in our house. It's (we us ours).
- 10. They're my friends. They're (his theirs mine).
- 11. This bike is (he him his).
- 12. That room is (she her hers).
- 13. This bag belongs to me. (It its It's) mine.
- 14. This cat is hers . It's (she hers her) cat .
- 15. This shirt is (yours your you).

C Rearrange the following words:

- 1. kite hers is This.
- 2. their They- houses are.
- 3. is mine This- bag.

Mills a paragraph of FIFTH (50) words on Your community

live- village / cows – goats / plants ~ trees / clean – air / like - village

.....

Lasson 2

The history of Egypt تاریخ مصر

| history | تاريخ | separate | منقصل |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------|----------------|
| ancient Egypt | مصر العديمة | areas | مناطق |
| sail | يبحر | Lower Egypt | مصر السقلي |
| country | <u>دو</u> له | Upper Egypt | متسر العليا |
| unite | يوحد | north | الطبيال |
| main parts | اجزاء رئيسية | pharaohs | الفراعنة |
| important | هام | control | يدحكم قي |
| Egyptians | المصريين | BCE | ما قبل اثناريخ |
| hieroglyphs | اللغة الهيرو غليفية | dynasties | مىلالات حاكمة |
| Stone | <u> </u> | scriber | کاتب / خطاط |
| The old Kingdom | المملكة القديمة | Nile | نهر النيل |
| symbols | رموز | boats | مر اکنپ |
| tombs | مقابر | south | الجنوب |
| papyrus reeds | ورق البردي | flow | يفيض |
| The Middle Kingdom | المملكة الوسطي | through | من خلال |
| join | يربط | deserts | صحاري |
| powerful | ق و ي | Mena | الملك مينا |
| The New Kingdom | المملكة الجديدة | museum | منحف |
| happen | يحدث | rule | يحكم |

Definitions

| Mena | ancient Egyptian king who united the north | h and the south of الملك مينا | |
|-------------|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| tomb | a large stone and underground room when person, is buried. | مقيرة | |
| symbol | a sign, shape or object which is used to represent something else. | | |
| pharaoh | the title of a king of ancient Egypt. | فرعون | |
| Hieroglyphs | writing systems, used in ancient Egypt. | اللغة الهيروغليفية | |
| dynasties | a series of rulers or leaders who are from country is ruled by them. | the same family, a سلالات حکمة | |

Readina

ancient Egypt?

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

مصر دولة لها تاريخ طويل ومثير للاعتمام بدا الناس معشور بالفراس مل النيل ملذ حوالي 9000 علم . في 7000 علل المساد

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

فی اندیا ، کشت هنگ منطقان منعصلتان کن انوحه البحری فی سندی ، حیث بندفی سد ، حیث بندفی سد عبر صحاری افریقی سدی مصر می انجاوی ، حیث بندفی سا



In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

قى حوالى عام 3200 قبل السيلاد ، فأم القرعون مين يضم هين العزاين للوحد دونة مصر .

Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

سطرت مصر على النيل بقدر ما نستطبع المراكب ان تبحر به . لذلك صبحت قويه جد .

There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt:

the Old Kingdom the Middle Kingdom the New Kingdom [2800-2200 BCE] [2065 - 1775 BCE] [1570- 1098 BCE]

important ay nustres controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

سيطرت سلالات حاكمة مهمة على مصر لمشوات عديدة. كانت هناك عديات مهمه حكمت البادر

* Did you know

The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648-2627 BCE.

هرم روسر هو اللم شرد شي العالم ود الماس في شامه عي حوالي 2028-2027 مي المالاد.

when and people start to live near the Nile?

Mhere was Lower Egypt?

thy was Egypt powerful when it united?

4. Who was the pharaoh who united the two parts of Egypt?

Practice Exercises

| 1. Read and match | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| A | В | |
| 1. Lower Egypt was | a. Egypt for many years. | |
| 2. Upper Egypt was | b. the deserts of Africa. | |
| 3. the Nile flows through | c. in the north. | |
| 4. Important dynasties controlled | d. in the south. | |

2. Choose the correct answer.

- 1. Egypt is a (village country city) with a long history.
- 2. At first, there were two (sport support separate) areas.
- 3. (Lower Upper Higher) Egypt is in the north.
- 4. Upper Egypt is in the (north south east).
- 5. The Nile (travels joins runs) the sea in the north of Egypt.
- 6. The Nile (fellows-follows-flows) through the deserts of Africa.
- 7. Mena (united-separates burned) the south and the north.
- 8. Boats could (seal sail sell) on the Nile.
- 9. A dynasty was an important (person animal family) that ruled for many years.
- 10. Pharaohs (ruled rubbed robbed) Egypt for many years.

3. Read the passage and unswer the questions:

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What do you know about Egypt?
- 2. When did people start to live near the Nile?
- 3. When did Egypt become united?

B) Choose the correct answer?

- 3. Mena (united divided built) the two parts of Egypt.
- 4. The Nile flows through the (soil desert sea) of Africa.

Grammar The past simple tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

تكوينه : Form

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل (باضافة ed / -ed / -ied في نهاية الفعل وتوجد افعال شاذة في التصريف الثاني.

- I visited Aswan last year.
- Ahmed studied English at school.
- My brother moved to Cairo.
- · Heba wrote the lesson twice.
- They bought a new villa.



A. Regular verbs in the past simple tense

1. When the regular verb ends in (e) we add (d) to the verb.

1. عندما ينتهي الفعل المنتظم ب (e) نضيف (d) إلى الفعل.

like - liked/ live - lived/ smile - smiled

2. When the regular verb ends in (consonant + y) we omit (y) and add (ied).

2. عندما ينتهي الفعل العادي ب (ساكن + y) نحنف (y) ونضيف (ied).

(try - tried) - (cry - cried) - (study - studied)

3. But when the regular verb ends in (one vowel + one consonant) we double the last letter and add (ed)

 ولكن عندما ينتهي الفعل العادي بـ (حرف متحرك واحد + حرف ساكن واحد) تضاعف الحرف الاخير ونضيف (ed)

(cancel - cancelled) - (travel - travelled) - (stop - stopped) يجب حفظ الافعال الشاذة في ملحق القواعد.

* Usage:

الإستخدام

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عندما نتحدث عن أفعال بدأت وانتهت في الماضي. تحكي قصة في الماضي.

الكلمات الدالة على الماضي:

(last -ago - yesterday - in the past - in + date).

- We went to school yesterday.
- I studied French two years ago.
- In the past, the sailors used the stars in the sea.

النفي Negative

had --- didn't have

- ✓ He didn't have a car.
- They didn't have their books.

السوال بهل Yes or No questions

Did......have ...? -Yes,did. / No,didn't.

Did he have a car last year?

- -Yes, he did.
- Dud they have a big house two years ago?
- -No. they didn't.

Verb (to do) in the past simple: 🕒

He / She / It (singular) / I / You / We / They (plural) did

- ✓ He did his homework.
- They did their homework.

النفي Negative

did ---- didn't do

- ✓ He didn't do his homework.
- They didn't do their homework.

les or No questions السوال بهل

Did......do...? -Yes,did.\No,didn't.

Did he do his homework?

- -Yes, he did.
- Did they do their homework?
- -No, they didn't.

Practice Exercises

1. (He - write - the lesson)

He wrote the lesson

- 2 (They walk to school)
- 3. (We watch TV)

Theore the portout answer

- 1. Yesterday, I (watkett walk walks) to school.
- 2. I (go went going) to the club last week.
- 3. She (wash washes washed) the clothes three hours ago.
- 4. (Do Does Did) Ali read the story last week?
- 5. What (did-does do) Samy eat yesterday?

Hi! Series

- 6. Did Omar wear his jacket? -Yes. He (do does did).
- 7. Last month, I (get got gets) the full mark in English.
- 8. Two years ago, I (am was were) in primary two.
- 9. Where did she (travel travelled travels)?
- 10. Did Mona (liked-likes like) the cake?
- 11. When (do did does) he get up yesterday?
- 12. Mena (joined joins joining) the north and the south.
- 13. Hagar (buy bought buys) a new skirt yesterday.
- 14. Miar (took take takes) her umbrella an hour ago.
- 15. Did you see the lion? -No, I (did didn't don't).
- 16. Did Amr wear his jacket? -Yes, he (did didn't don't).
- 17. I (ride rode rides) my bike to school yesterday.
- 18. (Do Does Did) she watch the match? -Yes, she did.
- 19. The Pharaohs (rule ruled rules) ancient Egypt in the past.
- 20. They (was were are) at the cinema last week.

| ق لاي خود | manis a (regul | ar) ar (liregular) | 7 |
|--------------|----------------|---|---|
| 1 | start | 71174VARC13331174111411A13333141A14 | |
| 2 | join | *************************************** | |
| 3 | control | ****************************** | |
| 4 | become | | |
| 5 | rule | ************************************** | |
| 6 | are | *************************************** | _ |
| 7 | la la | #1##PHICH C11140 F77791A4######### | - |



Lesson 3 THE GOVERNORATES OF EGYPT

محافظات مصر

New vocabulary

| governorate | محافظة | popular | محبوب |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| тар | خريطة | | الغوص تحت الماء |
| cities | مدن | water sports | رياضات مانية |
| areas | مناطق | Aswan | امنوان |
| countryside | المريق | farthest | ابعد |
| large | کېپر | capital | عاصمة |
| Cairo | القاهرة | engineers | مهندسين |
| New Valley | الوادي الجديد | High Dam | المبد العالى |
| Alexandria | الامكندرية | ships | سفن |
| Matrouh | مطروح | sail | پېدر |
| Damietta | المواط | used to | اعتلا ان |
| Square kilometer | كيلومتر مربع | capital city | المدينة العاصمة |
| Red Sea | البحر الاحمر | find out | يكتشف |
| beach | شاطئ | natural features | ملامح طبيعية |

Reading

THE GOVERNORATES OF EGYPT

محافظات مصر

There are 27 governorates in Egypt :oday. Look at the map. Where do you live?

هنك 27 معافظة في مصر اليوم. انظر الى الغريطة. أين تعدر

Which governorates are next to the sea?

Which governorates are next to another country?

What are 3 governorates in Lower Egypt?

What are 3 governorates in Upper Egypt?



† Roord waraki

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

أنا فارس وأعيش في محافظة البحر الأحمر. لها شاطئ يزيد طوله عن 1000 كم. إنه مكان شهير للغاية لزيارته لممارسة رياضة الغوص والرياضات المانية





I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

انًا نادية واسكن في محافظة اسوان. إنها أقصى الجنوب في صعيد مصر عاصمتها أسوان, أنتهى المهندسون في علم 1970 من بناء السد العالى باسوان.

I'm Ibrahim, and I live in Alexandria Governorate, it's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

أنا إبراهيم وأعيش في معافظة الإسكندرية ، وه ي مهمة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر من وإلى الميناء. كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر



| 1. Write about your governorate: | اكتب عن محافظتك |
|--|---|
| 1. How big is it? | |
| 2. How many people live there . | |
| 3. What is the biggest city ? | |
| 4. What natural features it has . | |
| 494 \ (444 C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C | 15p000000pv5545545545500250p0544544444444 |
| | |
| | |
| ### PP# | 740 10 840 400 400 700 800 2444 000 747 747 747 748 747 747 747 747 747 747 |
| | |
| 4214144475455414914544445454554554554554554554554554545454 | |
| | |

Practice Exercises

| 1 | Tisten and | circle | the cor | rect aus | wer from | a, b, c, or d |
|---|------------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------------|
| 4 | T | _ | | | | |

- 1. Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting a. Art b. history c. Arabic d. Math
- 2. Lower Egypt was in the

- a. south
- b. west

| 3. Upper Egypt w a. south | | c. east | d. north |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------|
| | | rts to unite the co | |
| a. Mena | b. Dina | c. Lina | d. Tina |
| 2. Reorder the v | rords to make to | ract sentances | |
| 1. Red - <u>I</u> - the - Go | overnorate- in - liv | re - Sea. | |

2. capital - is - used - to be - the - of Egypt- Alexandria.

3. High Dam - finished- In 1970, - the Aswan- engineers.

3. Character operated worth

- 1. There are 27 (villages governorates cities) in Egypt.
- 2. Red Sea Governorate is near the (Red Yellow White) sea in Egypt.
- 3. Aswan is in (Lower Upper Smaller) Egypt.
- 4. Alexandria is in (Lower Upper Smaller) Egypt.
- 5. Scuba (flying diving running) is my favorite hobby.
- 6. Aswan is in the (nearest coldest farthest) south in Upper Egypt.
- 7. The High (Dam Tower Hotel) controls the Nile water in Aswan.
- 8. Lots of ships sail in and out of the port in (Giza Cairo Alexandria) governorate.
- 9. Alexandria used to be the (cartoon captain capital) city of Egypt.

4 Complete the Malogue with wards from the bes

family park beach went

Malak : When did you go to Matrouh?

Hoda : I to Matrouh last summer.

Malak : What did you do there?

Hoda: I swam in the sea and played on the

Malak : Who did you go with?

Hoda : My

Malak : Did you enjoy themselves there?

Hoda : Yes, we did.

| live - Giza / Lower – Egypt / warm – winter / hot – summer / pyramids - great |
|---|
| *************************************** |
| *************************************** |
| |
| 141441141141141144174417447747777777777 |
| |
| \$1#\$ja+#abi################################## |
| *************************************** |
| 107:00104:00104:00104:00104:00104:00104:00104:00104:0004:0004:0 |
| ************************************** |
| |
| 411 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 |
| |
| live - Aswan / Upper – Egypt / warm – winter / hot – summer / beautiful - city |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |

Lesson 4

Music

الموسيقي

| | الادوات الوترية String instruments | | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------|--------|--|
| العود | الشبابة | ربابة | القانون | الكمان | |
| | | 1 | integration of the second | | |
| oud | shabbaba | rebaba | qanun | violin | |

| Wind instruments | ادوات النفخ |
|------------------|-------------|
| الايوا/مزمان | ناي |
| | |
| oboe | ney |

vocabulary .

| ~aditional | تقليدي | drumming | التطبيل |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| k music | موسيقي شعبية | farther south | اقصى الجنوب |
| -tyles | اساليب | Nubian | نوبي |
| k musicians | موسيقيون شعبيون | clapping | التصفيق |
| aidi music | موسيقي صعيدي | important | هام |
| эе | نوع | Bedouin | بدوي |
| etring | خيط/وتر | popular | شانع / محبوب |
| strument | الة | mixed | ممتزج |
| nging | الغناء | modern style | اسلوب حديث |
| ramids | الاهرامات | special events | مناسبات خاصة |

Definitions

| traditional | belonging to the without changing | تقليدي |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| folk music | music belongs to a certain area. | موسيقي شعبية |
| drumming | to hit a drum and make a sound. | التطبيل |
| popular | enjoyed or supported by people | شائع امحبوب |
| Bedouin | Arab tribes أبائل live in the desert. | يدو |

Receiling

*Think and say. What kind of music do you like!

Read the text. What kinds of music does it talk about? Do you know any of this music?

اقرأ النص. ما أنواع الموسيقي التي تتحدث عنها؟ هل تعرف أياً من هذه الموسيقي؟

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
There are different styles from different parts of the country.

يوجد في مصر الكثير من الموسيقي الشعبية التقليدية. هذاك أتماط مختلفة من أجراء مختلفة من البلاد.

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play
Saidi music. This type of music uses
string instruments such as violins, and
wind instruments such as the oboe.
Singing and drumming is also a key
part.

يعرف الموسيقيون الشعيون من صعد مصر الموسيقى الصعيدي. يستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الألات الوترية مثل الكمان ، وآلات النقخ مثل المرمل. يعتبر الغناء والطبول جزءًا أسفياً أيضًا.



Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping and drumming is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt. Sometimes it is mixed with other modern styles of music. وقوم الموسيقي النوبية. يعتبر التصفيق والتطبيل جزءًا مهمًا من هذا النوع من الموسيقي الحديثة الأخرى. الموسيقي الحديثة الأخرى. الموسيقي الحديثة الأخرى. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

أشهر الألات الموسيقية البدوية هم الشبابة والربابة. غالبًا ما تشتمل الموسيقى البدوية على الفتاء. عادة ما تكون الاغاني عن المناسبات الخاصة.

Did you know

Music was important in ancient Egypt, too. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

كانت الموسيقي مهمة في مصر القديمة أيضًا. نحن نظم هذا لأن الكتبة رسموا صوراً لموسيقيين يعزفون على الات وكان المصريون القدماء يضعون الآلات في الأهرامات.

Practice Exercises

| 1 Rand and complete | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|------|----------|-----|--|--|
| mportant | instruments | know | pictures | put | | |
| Music was | Music was important in Ancient Egypt, too. We this | | | | | |
| because sci | because scribes madeof musicians playing | | | | | |
| and Ancient Egyptiansinstruments into | | | | | | |
| pyramids. | | | | | | |

I. Choose the correct answer

- 1. Egypt has lots of traditional (folk fall fell) music.
- 2. There are different (steels styles stalls) from different parts of the country.
- 3. Folk musicians from (Lower Upper Smaller) Egypt play Saidi music.
- 4. The violin is a (wind string rope) instrument.
- 5. The (oboe rebaba- oud) is a wind instrument.
- 6. (Drumming Clapping Singing) is made by hitting your hands together.
- 7. (Clapping Singing Drumming) is hitting the drum.
- 8. Farther (south east north) is the home of Nubian music.
- 9. Nubian music is now (polar popular powder) all over Egypt.
- The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the (rebabafootball - swimming).

3. Read the passage and answer the questions:

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part. Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping and drumming is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt. Sometimes it is mixed with other modern styles of music. The most

popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

| A. Answer | the | following | augetione |
|-----------|------|-----------|-------------|
| A Answer | uie, | lounnanid | questions : |

- 1. Which instrument is wind instrument?
- 2. What do Bedouin like to play ?

R. Choose the correct answer:

- 3. (Nubia- Giza- Cairo) is in the farther south of Egypt.
- 4. Shabbaba is a (wind-string-wire) instrument.
- 4. Reorder the words to make correct sentences
- 1. traditional- music lots of Egypt- folk has.
- 2. Saidi music from play Folk musicians Upper Egypt.
- 3. Egypt is popular Nubian music- now all over.

Well- more and all the land the Music instrument

oud - string / oboe - wind / like - violin / Bedouin - rebaba

is. Complete the dialogue with wordsfrom the box?

done competition instrument Music

Mona : Do you like listening?

Soha : Yes, I do.

Mona : Which music......do you play?.

Soha : The piano.

Mona : Are you a member inclub at school?

Soha : Yes, I am. We have won in the last.....

Lessons 5 & 6

WRITING & Project

Merida sublifica

| dancing | الرقص | perform | يودي |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| history | تاريخ | look like | بيبيه |
| link to | ير تبط بــ | fighting | شجار |
| areas | مناطق | wear | يلبس |
| colorful | ملون | costumes | ازياء خاصة |
| lively | مقعم بالحيوية | dark | غامق |
| Saidi | صعيدي | plain | ممادة |
| musical | موسيقي | brightly-colored | زاهي اللون |
| dancers | ر اقصون | patterned | فيه رسومات |
| stick = Assaya | عصا | cities | مدن |
| step | يخطو | alongside | بطول |
| quickly | بسرعة | Suez Canal | قثاة السويس |
| carefully | بحرص | international | عالمي |
| pattern | نموذج | types | اثواع |
| Tahtib | التحطيب | musicians | موسيقيون |
| special | خاص | simsimeya | السمسمية |
| rhythm | ايقاع | tradition | تقليد |

*Read the text about folk dancing in Egypt. Have you seen any of these dances?

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas.

للرقص الشعبي تاريخ طويل في مصر وهي مرتبطة بالموسيقي الشعبية من مناطق مختلفة.

Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.

الرقص النوبي مقعم بالحيوية والمنونة. يحرك الناس أذرعهم وأقدامهم على إيقاع الموسيقي.



Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.

ريما تكون رقصة العصابا أشهر رقصة من تقليد الموسيقى الصعيدي. يستخدم الرَّاقصون العصابا ويتقدمون بسرعة في الماط هاصة. التحطيب هو أيضا من تقليد الموسيقى الصعيدي. يؤذي الراقصون رقصة يعنابة بالعصي بطريقة تشبه الشجار. يرتدي الراقصون أزياء خاصة. يمكن أن تكون هذه الألوان داكلة وسادة ، أو ذات الوان زاهية معتقد شة

In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the <u>simsimeya</u>, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

في المدن الواقعة على طول قتاة السويس ، هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقي والرقص. يعزف الموسيقيون على السمسمية آلة بدوية بالإضافة إلى الطبول.

| * Read the tip and underline the topic sentence of how the topic sentence is developed: | of the text in Exercise 1. Check |
|---|----------------------------------|
| using facts about the topic | |
| using definitions of important words | |
| using more details about the topic | |

* Read the tip. Find and circle the adjectives in the text:

When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

| ١ | quickly | famous | colorful | bright | carefully |
|---|---------|--------|----------|--------|-----------|
| ì | | | | - | |

| Adjectives | Adverbs |
|------------|---------|
| | |
| | |
| | |

* Writing tip!

The first sentence (or sentences) of a paragraph is usually called the topic or introduction sentence. It explains the main idea of the paragraph. The last sentence in a paragraph usually presents a summary of the topic in other words. Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

عادة ما تسمى الجملة الأولى (أو الجمل) من الفقرة بجملة الموضوع أو الجملة التمهيدية. فهي تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة. عادةً ما تقدم الجملة الاخيرة في الفقرة ملخصًا للموضوع بكلمات أخرى. يجب تطوير جمل الموضوع في الفقرات بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.



Hi! Series

| | pe of music or dance you like. Use adjectives and adverbs to eresting. Remember to develop your topic sentence by finitions or facts : |
|---|--|
| ********************** | |
| ******************** | *************************************** |
| 100 11 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | *************************************** |
| 144415151 004444511 15044654464 | *************************************** |
| 111111111111111111111111111111111111111 | >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>> |
| ************************ | *************************************** |
| *************************************** | |
| **************** | *************************************** |
| | PROJECT مشروع |
| | these sections of a tourist information guide to the type of بنيل المغلومات السياحية : it section |
| 1. Location الموقع | a. where a place is in the country. |
| 2. Geography الجغرافيا | b. what you can do and see in a place. |
| 3. Attractions عوامل الجذب | c. the environment and any natural features |
| 4. History التاريخ | d. information about what happened here in the past |
| 5. Culture ইন্নার্যা | e. traditional art, entertainment, food, and music. |
| * 1/11/2 | a tom ist avide to a place you live. |

Luxor

live in luxor . it's a touist city in the south of Egypt. Luxor has many tourist attractions and mounuments . it has temples like Karnak temple and Luxor temple. There is also the Valley of Kings . It has folk music ike the Saidi musical tradition. You can enjoy the River Nile cruise and flying balloons.

Practice Exercises

| 1. Location | a. information about what happened here in the past |
|----------------|---|
| 2. Geography | b. the environment and any natural features |
| 3. Attractions | c. traditional art, entertainment, food, and music |
| 4. History | d. where a place is in the country |
| 5. Culture | e. what you can do and see in a place |

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.

Tick (\checkmark) or (X):

| Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. | (|) |
|--|---|---|
| 2. Nubian dancing is dull and colorful. | | - |
| 3. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step slowly. | |) |
| 4. Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. | (|) |

to without oil

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. In the cities...... the Suez Canal, there are types of music and dance.play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using differet colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

Hi! Series

Carpet making is another Egyptians craft. A skilled person can work suickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, sing Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their omplicated patterns in red and blue.

- 1. In the past, who made Khayameya?
- 2. What was Khayameya made for?
- 3. Where can you buy Khayameya? 4. How long does it take to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet?
- 5. What colors are often used in Egyptian carpets?

Practice Test

نص الاستماع في نهاية الوحدة

| | Egypt has lots o | f traditional folk | 444 000 5 11 11 10 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 | |
|---|------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------|
| | a. dance | b. history | c. music | d. football |
| _ | | musicians from | Upper Egypt play | Saidi music. |
| | a. FOIK | D. music | c. acting | d fact |
| - | This type of mu | sic uses | instruments | such as violine |
| | a. rope | b. wire | c. thread | d. string |
| £ | Singing and | is | also a key nart | 4. 04. 11.6 |
| | a. kicking | b. drumming | c. shouting | d. hopping |
| | | | | |
| | Raqs Assaya is a | famous dance fr | om the Saidi | tradition |

The Tahtib is from the of Saidi music.

3. Dancers wear special

- The costumes can be dark and and patterned.

B. Reading

| Folk | colorful | rhythm | dancina |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| Folk dancing has | s a long history in | Egypt. It is linked t | to the |
| music of different - | NY 1.6 2 | | |

usic of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and People nove their arms and feet to theof the music.

Coral reefs are homes for many other animals, so they are a very exportant habitat. Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can hide sifely in a reef. It is a type of camouflage. The unusual shapes of coral reefs

| also give lots of places reef system in Africa a about 4,000 kilometer A. Choose the correct a | nd the third larg 's long, and cover nswer : | est reef system i rs over 2.000 sq | in the world. It is |
|---|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. What sort of fish co | | | |
| 2. How long is the Red | | | |
| B. Answer the following 3. A coral (reef – roof 4. The Red sea is four | - loaf) is a habi | tat for sea anin | nals.) kilometers long. |
| | The R | eader | |
| 5. A. Read and writ e | e T True or F (1 | False): | |
| Grandfather's eye Grandfather's job Choose the correct | was a tent mak | er. He's an engl | neer. () |
| 3. Grandfather's job | | | d. farmer |
| 4. Grandfather is a | | | |
| | b. toy | | d. tent |
| | C. Wr | iting | |
| 6. Choose the corre | the same of the sa | | |
| 1. Miar | | | |
| a. took 2. What | b. take | c. taking | d. takes |
| 2. What | Samy eat ye | esterday? | |
| a. does | b. doing | c. did | d. do |
| 3. It's my communit | y. It's | | |
| a. mine | b. hers | c. yours | d. his |
| 4. It's your house. It | 's | 4 9 8 9 8 7 | |
| a. you | b. your | c. yours | d. his |
| 7. Order the words | to make corre | ct sentences : | |
| 1. bag - mine - This | | | |
| 2. Egypt - has - histo | ry - in - <u>Folk da</u> | ncing - a long. | *************************************** |
| ******************************* | | | ***** |

3 1

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words on :

Music

| Guiding elements: | | | | | |
|---|---------------|------------------|---------------|---|-----------|
| Grandfather - oud / 1 | play – well / | teach - me / | oud – old / l | ike – grand | lfather) |
| ******************************* | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | *************** | | | |
| *************************************** | | | ********* | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | ********* |
| ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | ********* | 1**45*44** | | | ******* |
| .44.11111111111111111111111111111111111 | ********** | **************** | ************* | | |
| ****************************** | ************ | ************* | *********** | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | ******* |
| | | | | | |

Listening Text Lesson 1

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. t is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community acludes my family, my friends, and my school.

Lesson 3

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

Model exam listening texts

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from c.fferent parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind astruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

**Uisten and complete:

Page Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

Pancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.



Review 1

NON-FICTION READER:

CORAL REEFS

الشعب المرجانية

- * Read and listen. What is a coral reef? Choose the best answer:
 - a. a brightly colored plant
 - b. a large area of plants and animals
 - 3. invertebrates that grow slowly and don't move

What are coral reefs? They look like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates, called polyps. They have a hard exoskeleton, and they don't move - they stay in the same place all the time.

ما هي الشعاب المرجانية؟ تبدو وكاتها مصنوعة من النبأتات ، لكن هذا خطأ . تتكون الشعاب المرجانية من آلاف الملافقاريات الصغيرة ، والتي تسمى البوليبات لليهم هيكل خارجي صلب ، ولا يتحركون - بيقون في نفس المكان طوال الوقت .



Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly. They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years.

تنمو فصائل مختلفة من الحبوانات المانية البسيطة الى أشكال واحجام مختلفة ، لكنها تنمو جميعها ببطء شنيد جدا. يمكن أن تنمو في بعض الأحيان لأكثر من عشرة آلاف سنة.



We think coral reefs have very bright colors. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny algae that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see. In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny organisms.

نعتقد أن الوان الشعاب المرجانية راهية للغاية. ومع ذلك ، فإن معظم السحال المرجانية ليس لها لون. اجسادهم صافية وهياكلهم الخارجية بيضاء. يأتي اللون من الطحالي الصغيرة التي تعيش داخل الحيواتات المائية البسيطة. إنها الواتها الزاهية التي يمكننا روينها. في جزء صغير من الشعاب المرجانية ، بوجد الملايين من هذه الكاننات الدقيقة.

Coral polyps can live in all the oceans around the world, in very cold water and in warm seas. They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water. The water must be shallow too, because the reefs need sunlight to live and to grow.



مكن ان نعبش السلامل المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم ، في مهاه شديدة البرودة وفي النجار الدافية. هم فعط بنمر معا ويصفعون الشعاب المرجابية في الماء الدافي. يجب ان بكون المياه ضحله ايضا ، لان الشعاب المرحقية لحدج الى شو -السمس لنعيش وتثمق

Coral reefs are homes for many other animals, so they are a very important nabitat. Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is

. type of camouflage. The unusual shapes coral reefs also give lots of places to hide.

نعد الشعاب المرجانية موطنا للعديد من الحبوانات الاخرى ، لذ في موطن مهم جدا. غالبا ما تتعيز الاسماك الاستوانية بالوان زاهه حد متمكن من الاحتياء بأمان في الشعاب المرجانبة. أنه نوع من المد . موفر الاشتال عير العادية للشعاب المرجابية ابضا الكثير من الامــ للاحتباع



we Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third . -gest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2.000 square kilometers.

الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الاحمر هي أكبر نظم للشعاب المرجانية في الربقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية في د ببلع طوله حوالي 4000 كيلومتر ، ويغطى اكثر من 2.000 كيلومتر مربع.

Practice Exercises

nd again and answer:

Why do coral reefs have bright colors?

1 hy do coral reefs need sunlight?

why do tropical fish live in coral reefs?

· and match:

| exoskeleton | а | not deep; in the sea or a river, the water doesn't go down very far |
|-----------------|---|---|
| ='gae | b | no color; you can see through it |
| rga nism | c | a skeleton that is on the outside of an invertebrate's body |
| -ar | d | very simple organisms that live in water |
| -ivp | e | a living animal or plant |

6. shallow

a very small and simple creature that lives in the sea

Tip!

Algae is a plural word. Algae الطحالب live inside coral polyps.

3.Look, read and circle a or b :

1. a Coral polyps have a clear exoskeleton.

b Coral polyps have a skeleton which can be different colors.

2. a All species of polyps look the same in a coral reef.

b Different species of polyps are a variety of shapes and sizes.



b Coral reefs grow in shallow water because they need sunlight.

غرار ما هو ابيضاض غرجن ° 4.Read. What is coral bleaching

At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer. This is because of global warming.

في الوقت الحالي ، تزداد درجة حرارة البحار والمحيطات على الارض. هذا بسبب الاحتياس الحراري.



When the water temperature rises, the algae inside the coral polyps leave. The algae give the coral reef its bright colors. So, when the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called coral bleaching.

عندما ترتفع درجة حرارة الماء ، تغدر الطحالب داخل الحيوانات المانية البسيطة المرجانية. تعطى الطحالب للشعاب المرجانية الوائها الزاهية. لذلك ، عندما تغادر الطحالب ، تكون الشعاب المرجانية شاحبة وبيضاء, وهذا ما يسمى ابيضاض المرجان.

Coral bleaching can also happen when there is pollution, too much sunlight, or not enough water. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies, and the animals that live in the reef cannot stay there.

بمكن ان يحدث تبيض المرجان ايضا عندما يكون هناك تلوث او كثرة ضوء الشمس او علم وجود ماء كافير عندما نقد الشبعاب المرجان أدنها بموث المرجان ولا تستطيع الحيوانات الني تعيش في الشبعاب انبقاء هناك.







in 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Sea survive changes in temperature. They are the only types of coral the world that can do this. The water of the Red Sea is warmer than the seas, so the coral in the Red Sea does not have the same with coral bleaching. Scientists hope that they can use the Sea coral to protect other coral reefs around the world.

في عام 2020 ، اكتشف الطماء ان بعض الشعاب المرجلتية في البحر الأحمر يمكنها تحمل التغيرات في درجات الحرارة. هي الانواع الوحيدة من الشعاب المرجانية في العالم التي يمكنها انقيام بذلك. مياه البحر الأحمر أكثر نظم الحرارة. هي الانواع الوحيدة من الشعاب المرجلتية في البحر الأحمر لا تعلني من نفس المشكلة مع ابيضاض المرحد من البحار الاحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجلتية الأخرى حول العالم.

To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our cans. We must also work together to reduce global warming. It's portant to protect the Red Sea coral reef and other coral reefs.

لحماية الشعاب المرجانية ، تحتاج ايضا إلى تقليل التلوث في محيطاتنا. يجب علينا أيضا العمل معا للحد من ظام ا الاحتباس الحراري. من المهم حماية الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الاحمر والشعاب المرجانية الاخرى حول العلم

"Read and answer:

What causes coral bleaching?

. Why is coral bleaching a problem?

Why are the Red Sea coral reefs different?

| beak | fur | heart | lungs | scales | skeleton |
|------|-----|-------|-------|--------|----------|





2. Board and sout bird bat crab fish grasshopper jelly fish spider turtle

| Vertebrates | Invertebrates |
|-------------|---------------|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

I Read and answer (Verac Na.)

- 1. A vertebrate is an animal without a backbone.
- 2. There are three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt.
- 3. Lower Egypt is in the south.
- 4. We use our digestive system when we breathe.
- 5. Reptiles are cold-blooded.
- 6. When we exercise, our heart beats more slowly.

| Table American Company | | | |
|-------------------------|--|------------------------------|----------|
| 1. We move lots of o | lifferent muscles w | hen wegame | |
| as tennis or foo | tball. | nen wegame | s such |
| 2. Our brain | | ve do | |
| 3. 1tir | ed after exercise | | |
| 4. We | our ears for hearing | 10 | |
| 5. The human body | ahou | t five liters of blood. | |
| 6 Our body | amazina thir | nae! | |
| Write sentences U | se the cornect form of | 6thannah and sha ali | |
| ! an ostrich / be / bi | g / than / a bee hum | mingbird /. | |
| | | | |
| 2 an elephant / be / | small / than / a blue | whale / . | ******** |
| s snaile / ho / closs / | Al / 1 | | |
| snails / be / slow / | tnan / aragonflies / | • | |
| + be / eagles / fast / | than / mice / ? | | |
| | *************************************** | | |
| (| | 1 | ******** |
| | 1 100 | | |
| | | | |
| (a. | h | | |
| The Paris of the Land | | С | |
| The River Nile Laure | The second secon | - | |
| Tuntry It? | very important wh | nen Egypt developed as a | |
| Cartile Thorn | twice a year | and this 3th | e land |
| Finding sageon are | three seas | ons of farming in Egypt - | |
| Event | wing season and he | arvest. The rulers of Ancien | rt . |
| and a | the River Nile alor | ng all the area where boats | |
| muntry, | n it, so Egypt 7 | a very powerful | |
| | | | |
| 1. a be | b was | c were | |
| 2. a flooded | b flooding | c floods | |
| 3. a making | b make | c made | |
| 4. a was | b is | c were | |
| 5 a controlled | b control | c controls | |
| 6. a can | b could | c can't | |
| 7. a become | b became | c becomes | |
| Office . | | c becomes | |

Review 1 HIL Series Princer

| 7-baok, read as | nd complete | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------|
| code | drumming | instruments | invertebrate | primary |
| senses- | shells | string | touch | warm |

- a. We don't understand everything the brain does, but it controls our
- 1. senses, memories and how we speak.
- b. The biggest group of animals on land is the 2. group. These animals don't have a backbone, but some have hard 3.for protection.
- d. Braille is a 7.which uses combinations of dots to represent letters, number, punctuation marks or whole words. People who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use this to read. They use 8.instead of sight.
- e. There are three 9. colors: red, yellow and blue. We make secondary colors by mixing these three colors together. Colors such as red, orange and yellow are 10. Colors such as blue and green are cold.

8. Read again and answer :

- 1. What controls our memories?
- 2. What is the same about all invertebrates?
- 3. What is special about Nubian dancing?
- 4. What do people touch when they read Braille?
- 5. How many primary colors are there?

المدينة و الريف المدينة و الريف

in this unit I will

- mpare life in the city and in the country.
- · orm and use regular and irregular plural nouns.
- ead about crafts and heritage industries.
- _se subordinating conjunctions in sentences.
- · nultiply and divide numbers.
- add and subtract fractions.
- · ...an smart growth for a city.

Scope and Sequence

| | т | | | | |
|------------------|-----|---|--|--|--|
| cabulary | : | places: city, congestion, densely populated, sparsely | | | |
| | | populated, inhabitant, isolated, metropolitan, | | | |
| | | pedestrian, rural, services, traditional, urban, village | | | |
| | | irregular plurals: babies, buffaloes, children, geese, men, | | | |
| | | people, potatoes, sheep, tomatoes, women | | | |
| | | craft: artisan, carpet, dye, spin, warp, yarn | | | |
| ≕nguage | N N | Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet. | | | |
| | | My grandma took me to a workshop so that I could learn about this craft. | | | |
| | | These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. | | | |
| iding | : | A text about cities and villages . A text about visiting a | | | |
| | | carpet workshop; a text about a city | | | |
| riting | : | Sentences with subordinating conjunctions; a text about | | | |
| | | your city; a description of a design | | | |
| eaking | : | Describing where you live | | | |
| tening | : | Descriptions of a city and a village; an interview about different places | | | |
| e skills | : | Creativity: design a new area of smart growth for a city | | | |
| lues | : | Curlosity / Objectivity | | | |
| Lsues | : | Citizenship / Sustainable development | | | |
| integrated cross | j- | : Social studies: places in town; giving directions; | | | |
| | cs | traditional crafts | | | |
| | | Math: multiplying and dividing numbers; adding and | | | |
| | | subtracting fractions Art: traditional crafts | | | |

Lesson 1

Rural and urban places الاماكن الريفية والحضرية

| تدظ بالسكان | | 1 | قليل السكا | المشاة | |
|---|-------|---|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| | | | | | |
| densely popu | lated | sparsel | y populated | pedestrians | |
| الإيجام | | المناف | مديله | قربه | |
| p od) | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| congestion | iso | lated | city | village | |
| Congestion New vocabulary | iso | lated | city | village | |
| New vocabulary . traditional | iso | lated | | | |
| New vocabulary : | iso | | traffic jam | زحام مروزي | |
| New vocabulary . traditional | | g salki | traffic jam close to | ز حام مرور ي قريب من | |
| New vocabulary : traditional inhabitants | | کان میکان | traffic jam | زحام مروري قريب من مزدحم | |
| New vocabulary a traditional inhabitants Greater Cairo | | كاللدي ممكان أقاهرة الكبري | traffic jam close to busy | ر حام مرور ي قريب من مزدهم حريص | |
| New vocabulary . traditional inhabitants Greater Cairo metropolitan | | كالدي مكان أقاهرة الكبري عاصمي عاد البر | traffic jam close to busy careful | ز حام مرور ي قريب من | |

Definitions

| pedestrian | a person who is walking, espe- vehicles go. | cially in an area where مشاة الطريق |
|--------------|--|--|
| isolated | not near to other places. | منعزل |
| congestion | The (trattic) congestion in the during the summer. | city gets even worse |
| metropolitan | relating to a large city. | عاصمي/ مرتبط بالعاصمة |

Important Expressions

| want to | برد ن | a lot of | خبر من |
|------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| tell about | جمر عن | Hi there |) ha |
| live in | بعييان في | close to | الربيب من |







Reading text

* Listen and read :

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.



مرحبًا ، اسمى فريدة وأريد أن أخبرك عن المكان الذي أعيش فيه. أعيش فى القاهرة الكبرى. إنها منطقة حضرية ومكتظة بالممكان. هنك أكثر من 20 مليون نسمة ، لذا فهي مكان مزدهم للغاية. هناك الكثير من السيارات ويالتالي هناك ازدهام إذا كنت من المشاة فعليك تولحى الحذر الشديد.

Zein

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated - only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

أهلا. انا زين. سأخبركم عن قريتي. إنها ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة - يعيش هنا حوالي 700 شخص فقط. إنه أيضًا مكان تقليدي جدًا. إنه في الصحراء لذا فهو مكان منعزل أيضًا. لدينا الكثير من الخدمات بالقرب من منزل عائلتي ، مثل المتلجر والورش ومدرستي.

Did you know?



* More people live in rural areas than urban areas in Egypt.

يعيش عدد أكبر من الناس في العناطق الريفية اكثر من المناطق الحضرية في مصر



The oldest city in Egypt is probably Fayoum.
 Archeologists say that people started living there more than 6,000 years ago.

من المحتمل ان تكون الفيوم اقدم مدينة في مصر حيث يقول علماء الإثار ان الناس بدات تعيش هناك منذ اكثر من 6000 سنة.

Learne the fortest word to tomplete the semences

- 1. Fareeda lives in a rural/an urban environment. There are / aren't a lot of inhabitants. The population is sparse / dense.
- 2. Zein lives in a rural / an urban environment. There are / aren't a lot of inhabitants. The population is sparse / dense.





Practice Exercises

I. Listen and complete:

- 1. Giza is a metropolitan
- 2. Giza is a populated city.
- 3. You should be careful because ofjam.
- 4. The and Sphinx are ancient and famous in Giza.

If Complete the dialogue with words in the box

services - densely - Greater Cairo - inhabitants

Zein : Where do you live?

fareeda : I live in

Zein : Is it sparsely orpopulated?

fareeda : It's densely populated.

Zein : How manyare there ? fareeda : There are about 20 millions live in it.

Zein : What services are there?

fareeda : There are shops, schools and clubs.

2. Throse the direct inforced

- 1. I want to tell you (on at about) my city.
- 2. Greater Cairo is a (metropolitan polar bell) area.
- 3. A metropolitan is a (sparsely densely more) populated.
- 4. There are more than 20 million (habitat inhabit inhabitants) in Cairo.
- 5. There are a lot of cars so there's (moving congestion design).
- 6. A (production pedestrian pollution) are people who walk in the street.
- 7. Be very (care carefully careful) when you cross the road.
- 8. My village is (densely sparsely crowded) populated.
- 9. My village is a (traditional modern new) place. There is an old style of life in it.
- 10. The desert is an (ideal isolated island) place. No one lives there.
- 11. We must have lots of (services saliva solid) in my town like shops and workshops.

3. Renurange the following words

1. are - cars - the - city - There- in - a lot of.



Hi! Series

| 2. village- have - a lot of - We- in my - services. | | |
|---|--------|-------------|
| *************************************** | | |
| 3. populated- Cairo - is - <u>Greater</u> - densely. | | |
| | | 2 8 8 4 4 8 |
| 4. Fill in the spaces from the list: | | |
| workshops traditional isolated dense | ly | _ |
| I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely- | | |
| populated - only about 700 people live here. It's also a very | | |
| place. It's in the desert so it's anplace, too. We have a lot | | |
| of services close to my family's home though, like shops,, | | |
| and my school. | | |
| 5. Read and answer the questions: | | |
| Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I | | |
| live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely | | |
| populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very | | |
| busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion . If you | | |
| are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful. | | |
| Tick $(\sqrt{)}$ or (X) : | | |
| 1. Fareeda lives in Smaller Cairo. | -{ |) |
| 2. Greater Cairo is a metropolitan area. | -(|) |
| Greater Cairo is sparsely populated. | (|) |
| Pedestrian should be very careful. | (|) |
| There are less than 20 million inhabitants in Greater Cairo. | |) |
| Writen paragraph of FIFTY (58) worthwar Linia | | |
| city - big / like - city / lots - buildings / densely - population / lots - | servio | es |
| (7) 77 77 74 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 14 | | ***** |
| *************************************** | | **1 **1 |
| . (| | |
| (114174) (************************************ | | |
| ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | | |
| \$14.000 \$1.000 \$2.600.400.400.000.000.000.000.000.000.000 | | |

A N N I I A CON

Lesson 2

Language

New vocabulary

| animals | حيو اثاث | buffaloes | جاموس | traditional | ثقليدي |
|----------|----------|-----------|-------|-------------|-----------|
| onions | يصل | donkeys | عمور | home | بييث |
| dates | يلح | family | امبرة | women . | أسام |
| potatoes | بطنطس | street | شارع | sisters | الحوالت |
| grow | يتمو | lucky | محظوظ | grandma | جدة |
| tomatoes | طماطم | might | ريما | grandpa | جذ |
| farmer | فلاح | beautiful | جميل | babies | اطفال رضع |
| village | قرية | Egyptian | مصري | because | لان |
| grow up | وكير | geese | اوز | grown up | کبیر سٹا |
| sheep | خراف | river | نهر | life | حباة |

Definitions

| buffaloes | a large animal of the cattle family, with long curved horas | 2 |
|-------------|--|---|
| traditional | belonging to the customs for a long time without changing. عَلَيْدِي | 3 |

* Read about Walced's tife

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onlons. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and



two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

اسمي ولبد و ثد اعبش في قرية صغيرة على لنبل. و لدي مزارع. هو يررع الطمطم و بيضاطس و لنمر والبصل. لدينا بعص الحبوالت البصار هناك سنة اغذم و ثنال من الجاموس. هناك بعض الحمير في قريتي ، لكن عالمتي ليس لديها حمار الآل يمكنك روية القطط في الندرع واذا كلت مخطوطا ، هنك ترى بعض الاوز المصري الجميل على النهر.

My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it.
There are two men in my family - my dad and my grandpa - and two women my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have
two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you
have any brothers or sisters?

تعبش عبلتر في منزر تقلبذي. هناك سبعة النخاص يعيشون قيه. هناك رجلان في عبئتي - و لذي وحدي - وسيدتان - أمي وحسي وبالطبع . هنك بعض الاطفال ايضا! ندي أختان ، لكن ليمن هناك طفال لالنا كبرت جميعا. هل نديك اي اخوة او اخو ك؟





denselv

busy

Practice Exercises

I Listen and circle the correct answer from a. b. c or d: 1. Ahmed lives in a village on the Nile. a. big b. small d. micro 2. Ahmed's dad is a b. teacher d. farmer 1. In the village, there aresheep. a. ten b. none c. nine d. seven 1. We can see in a small village on the river. b. geese c. ducks and geese d. birds the text with the words below

3 Character the Land Character

pedestrian

1. He grows food on the farm. He's a (engineer - farmer - baker).

cars

- 2. (Tomatoes Potatoes Buffaloes) are red.
- 3. A (cat donkey buffalo) is a large animal that gives us milk.
- 4. Onions are (animals vegetables fruits).
- 5. A (donkey sheep goat) is an animal that carry heavy things.
- 6. If you are (luck lack lucky), you will see geese on the lake.
- 7. (Geese Goats Sheep) are beautiful birds that are on water.
- 8. "Traditional" means (new modern old).
- 9. We haven't babies because we're all grown (in of up).

4. Read the process and an ones the following questions

Waleed's family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it. There are two men in his family - his dad and his grandpa - and two women - his mom and his grandma. And of course, there are some children too! He has two sisters, but there aren't any babies because they're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters?

Choose the correct Answer:

- 1. My family live in a (new traditional modern) .
- 2. My family has (six four seven) people.
- 3. My family has (five three nine) children .
- 4. My family has (none two one) babies .
- 5. There are (three two five) men in the family.





Grammar

Plural Nouns جمع الاسماء

1. Regular nouns, we add (-s) at the end of it.

الإسماء المنتظمة تضيف حرف (5) في تهايتها .

brother brothers book books girl girls

- My brothers are very kind.
- These girls speak English well.
- Noun ending in (s/ss/sh/ch/o/xorz), we add (-es):
 اذا انتهي الاسم المفرد ب (s/ss/sh/ch/o/x/z) نضيف حرف (es) في نهاية الاسم المفرد بي المفرد بي المفرد ليصبح جمع .

bus buses watch watches dish dishes buffalo buffaloes box boxes fox foxes

- There are many buses in the city.
- They have a lot of buffaloes on the farm.
- 3. Noun ending in (consanant + y), we remove (y) and add (-ies):
 اذا انتهى الاسم المفرد بحرف (y) و فيلة حرف ساكن نحذف الـ (y) و نضيف (ies) في نهاية الاسم
 المفرد ليصبح جمع .

baby babies lady ladies city cities

- There are many cities in Egypt.
- We should look after our babies.
- 3. Noun ending in (vowel + y), we (-s):

اذَا انتهي الاسم المفرد بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف متحرك نضيف (s) في نهاية الاسم المفرد. donkey donkeys boy boys tov tovs

- Mazen bought many toys.
- Some boys are clever at music.

الاسماء الشاذة بالجمع Irregular plural

يجب حفظ الاسماء التي تجمع بطريقة غير منتظمة :

| | | | | 9, | W . C . | 9 | 8 4 24 |
|-------|-----|------|--------|-------|----------|----------------|------------|
| man | رجل | men | رجال | woman | امراة | women | تساء |
| ox | ئور | oxen | فيران | child | طفل | children | اطفال |
| foot | قدم | feet | اقدام | tooth | سنة | teeth | استان |
| mouse | فأر | mice | فنيران | goose | اوزة | geese | اوڙ |
| | | | | | جمع مثل: | ء تعامل مقرد و | بعض الاسما |

غزال / غزلان deer خروف / اغنام sheep خزال / غزلان



لاحظ ان : ياتي قبل الاسم الجمع (these / those / Some / all / many) ياتي قبل الاسم الجمع بدون اضافة حرف (are / were / have) s

Practice Exercises

(some)

Pratice Exercises:

| 1. This cat is small. | (These) |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| 2. There is one boy in the shop. | (three) |
| 3. My uncle has one child. | (two) |
| 4. There is a man in the room. | (are) |

2 Choose the correct answer:

5. We have a cat in the street.

- 1. I've got some (geese cat dog) on my farm.
- 2. The farmers grow a lot of onions and (vegetables banana apple).
- 3. There are some (donkeys train metro) in the village.
- 4. They have three young (gosling goslings tree).
- 5. The plural of "goose" is (gooses geese goslings).
- 6. The singular of children is (child man woman).
- 7. All (men man woman) should work hard.
- 8. There are three (buffalo buffaloes cat) on the farm.
- 9. Dogs (am is are) clever animals.
- 10. Cats (has have is) soft fur.

| baby | brother | buffalo | child | date | donkey | goose | man |
|--------|----------|---------|-------|--------|--------|--------|------|
| person | mountain | potato | sheep | sister | woman | tomato | city |

| Regular | Irregular | | |
|---------|-----------|--|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| - | |
|---|---|
| | grandpa - farmer / grow - food / keep - animals / geese - beautiful / lots - hens |
| | |
| | |
| | ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |

Lesson 3

Language

| warp | dyed yarn | spin | dye | carpet |
|--------|-----------|------|------|--------|
| | FR | | | |
| السداة | خيط مصبوغ | يغزل | صبغة | مىجادة |

| crafts | حرف بدوية | wool | صوف |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| artisans | حرفيون | dry | يجفف |
| workshop | ورشة | bright colors | الوان زاهية |
| spinning | يغزل | prefer | يقضل |
| weaving | ينسج / يحيك | dark colors | الوان عامقة |
| weave | بنسج | natural | طبيعي |
| yarn | خيط نسيج | vegetables | خضر أوات |
| loom | نول | synthetic dyes | صيغة صناعية |
| geometric | المتعسى | guide | مرشد / دلیل |
| patterns | رسومات | explain | بشرح |
| structure | هيكل | remember | يتنكر |
| machine | الة | pick out | بختار |
| collect | يجمع | wondering | يتسابل |
| skill | مهارة | different | مذالف |
| work | عمل | add | يضيف |

Definitions

| warp | a device for weaving. | السداة (الة غزل) |
|-----------|---|------------------------------------|
| dye | a substance used to change the cold | or of something. |
| artisans | a person who does skilled work wit | h his or her hands. حرفین |
| geometric | describes a pattern made up of sha triangles or rectangles | |
| loom | piece of equipment on which thread | is woven into cloth. نول (غزل) |

Reading text

visiting a Carpet wor nonep

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.



في الصيف الماضي كنت أرغب حقًا في التعرف على الحرف التقليدية المصرية. لذلك ، أخذتني جدت إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج حتى أتمكن من التعرف على هذه الحرفة. شرح المرشد كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد بينما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون.

First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then, they need to dye the yarn - that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.

أولاً ، يجمعون الصوف من الأغنام يجب عليهم تنظيف الصوف وغله وتجفيفه قبل أن يتمكنوا من استخدامه يقوم الحرفيو . بغزل الصوف لتحويله إلى خيوط بعد تنظيفه يحتاجون إلى صبغ الخيط بعد ذلك - هكذا يحصل على لونه. أعتقد أن الالوان الزاهية هي الأجمل رغم أن بعض الناس يفضلون الأنوان الداكنة. يستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية فقط ، على الرغم من أن بعض الورش الاخرى تستخدم الأصباغ الاصطناعية. أنا وجدتي نحب الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية لانها اكثر نظلينية.

So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to boil the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

لذا ، اعتقد أنك تتماعل الآن كيف يصبغون الصوف, حسنًا ، علمت أن النباتات والجنور المختلفة تزرع لاول مرة في قرية ريفية. ثم يستخدمون هذه النباتات والجنور لصبع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف, يجب عليهم غلي الخيط باستخدام الاصبع ثم تركه يجف، يمجرد أن يجف الخيط ، يمكنهم استخدامه لنسج المعجدة.

fore the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun gyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make seautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a





Hi! Series

machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

قبل أن يتمكن الحرفيون من نسج السجلا ، عليهم أن يصنعوا السداة السداة هو هيكل السجادة. يصنعون السداة باستخدام القطن المصري المغزول. في وقت لاحق ، يستخدمون السداة والصوف المصبوغ لصنع سجاد جميل. يصنع الحرفيون السجاد يدويًا باستخدام آلة تسمى النول. يضيفون الخيوط الماونة المختلفة لعمل رسوسات هندسية.

My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

سمجت لي جدتي أن أختار سجادة لغرفة نومي. في كل مرة انظر اليها ، اتذكر مقدار العمل والمهارة اللازمة لصنع سجادة واحدة أقطر

Practice Exercises

artists traditional workshop artisans

Last summer my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving so that I could learn about this craft. I really wanted to learn about Egyptian crafts. So, The guide explained how the make the carpets.

yarn dark bright dry

First, the artisans collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and the wool. Then, they spin the wool to make it into after they clean it. They need to dye the yarn. I think the colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

- 3. Choice the correct word
- 1. (Crafts Cates Caves) are things that are made by using hands.
- 2. A (sporting spinning spotting) workshop makes nice clothes.
- 3. (Waving Warning Weaving) means to make cloth from threads.
- 4. The (guide goat gap) explained how carpets are made.
- 5. The (artists actors artisans) make carpets.
- 6. Artisans collect the wool from the (geese sheep ducks).
- 7. Artisans should clean and (dry die dig) the wool they can use it.
- 8. The artisans (spoke -spin- spread) the wool.
- 9. They spin the wool to make (yards yaks yarns).
- 10. (Synthetic Sports Space) dyes are made from different colors.
- 11. Plants and roots are used to make beautiful (lies dyes cries).
- 12. Before weaving a carpet, the artisans have to make the (rib wrap rob).
- 13. They use the wrap from spinning Egyptian (cotton wood- metal).

| 14. The artisans use the (moon - mood - loom) to make carpets. |
|--|
| 15. They add (digital - letters - geometric) patterns on the carpet. |
| 4. Rearrange the following sentence : |
| 1. collect - They - the - from - wool - sheep |
| ✓ |
| 2. natural - I - dyes - the - like - vegetable |
| ✓ ************************************ |
| 3. weave - The - can - the - artisans - carpets. |
| ✓ ************************************ |
| 6. Read the passage then answer the questions : |
| Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the |
| warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp usin |

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

Answer the following questions:

- 1. What is the wrap?
- 2. What do the artisans use to make the wrap?

Choose the correct answer?

Artisans used colored yarn to make (math - geometric - Arabic) pattern. To make beautiful carpets, they (die - lie - dye) the wool.

Guiding words:

| | ol - sheep – wa | | |
|---|--------------------|---|-------|
| 494 PPP 444 494 444 444 444 444 444 444 | | | |
| *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** | | | |
| | ****************** | JO JJ 1 144 + 44 + 44 + 44 + 44 + 44 + 44 | , |
| **** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |





Grammar

الروابط الثانوية The subordinating conjunctions

يأتي بعدها وقت او مكان او طلب

- 1. Shall we go for a walk after breakfast?
- 2. Some people believe in life after death.
- 3. Her name came after mine on the list.
- 4. There's a good film on the day after tomorrow.

1 before

1 1

في أو خلال وقت قبل (الشيء المذكور)

- ✓ You should always wash your hands before meals.
- ✓ Before leaving, he said goodbye to each of them.
- ✓ She's always up before dawn.
- ✓ Before he could reach the door, she quickly closed it.

المحرد أن as soon as

في نفس الوقت أو بعد وقت قصير جذا

- * As soon as I saw her, I knew there was something wrong.
- ✓ I ran away as soon as I saw the snake.

4. while

خلال ذلك الوقت ، أو في نفس الوقت

- · I read it while you were drying your hair.
- While I was in Italy, I went to see Alessandro.
- I thought I heard him come in while we were having dinner.

- Even though he left school at 16, he still managed to become a doctor.
- She walked home by herself although she knew that it was dangerous.
- He decided to go although I begged him not to.

6. so that

لهدف تحقيق شيء ما

- He came home early so that he could see the children.
- · I agreed to her suggestion so that I could not upset her.

7. Every time

عكت أن أقول إنك دائمًا ما تحب أو تقضل شيفًا معيفًا

 Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

Practice Exercises

17 Choose the correct one

- I go to the swimming pool (so that after before) I could learn how to swim.
- 2. The artisans dry wool (after before although) they use it.
- 3. As (soon time that) as I arrive home, I have a shower.
- 4. I have lunch (before as soon-after) I have breakfast.
- 5. (Every time -Although So that) I look at the picture, I remember myself in the kindergarten.
- 6. I listen to music (although as soon as while) I am studying.
- 7. I say thank you (before after while) you give me your pen.
- 8. I do my homework (so that although even though) I could pass the exam.
- 9. Mona couldn't eat (after before although) she is hungry.
- 10. The parents watched their children (while- although even though) they were playing in the park.
- 11. We'll come home by bus (although after while) we've been to town.
- 12. I finished my homework (after before even though) I was tired and had a headache.
- Is Jasmine is studying English (although after so that) she become a journalist.
- We had to chop the vegetables (after -before -while) we cooked them.
- Dina ran upstairs to see her little sister (while even though as soon as) she got home.
- (Every time Although Even though) I go to Alexandria, I remember my wonderful holiday there.
- They ran inside (as soon as although though) it started to rain.
- We help Mom in the kitchen (while after soon) we've had dinner.
- I watched the football match (after although before) I don't like sports.
 - The audience didn't have to wait long (though before while) the concert started.
- Dad bought a laptop (so that although before) he could work at home sometimes.
- My little sister dances (as soon as although -every time) she hears this song.
 - Retal loves figs (although every time after) Malak prefers dates.
- I study hard (although so that though) I get high grades.
- I always wash my hands (before while soon as) I have my meal.

 (Before As soon as After) I went to the club, I met my friends.
- I opened the door (after while as soon as) the doorbell rang.

| سآت ا | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|--|--|
| - | | إخلاسالك والمسالك | | الثابات | |
| t. I | | rk so that | | | |
| 2 | | | wl | hile the teacl | her is talking. |
| 3. 1 | | ıfte r | | | |
| 4 | ************ | | is soon | as I get hom | e from school. |
| | | | | | |
| | | | in the K | | |
| - 50 | entences. | although | Acc | oon as | before |
| | after | although | | | |
| | even though | | so | | while |
| | | me to a spinning a | nd wear | ving worksno | p so that I could |
| | earn about this c | | | 4.T | |
| | _ | ed how the artisan: | s таке | tne carpet | ************************* |
| | ve watched them | | | | 4h 44 |
| 3. T | 'hev have to clea: | n. wash. and arv the | e wooi | | they can use it. |
| | | | | | # Ta X |
| 4. T | he artisans spin | the wool to make it | t into ya | | |
| 4. T 5. I | he artisans spin think the bright | the wool to make it colors are the most | t into ya | | |
| 4. T 5. I p | he artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. | t into ya t beautij | ful ones | some |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T | he artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar hese artisans on | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. ily use natural vege | t into ya t beautij | ful ones | some |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T | he artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar hese artisans on ther workshops | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. ily use natural vege use synthetic dyes. | t into ya beautij stable dy | ful ones ves, | some |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 | he artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar hese artisans on ther workshops | the wool to make it colors are the most it colors. It colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, t | t into ya t beautij table dy they can | ful onesves,ves,ves | somesome we a carpet |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 | he artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar hese artisans on ther workshops | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. ily use natural vege use synthetic dyes. | t into ya t beautij table dy they can | ful onesves,ves,ves | somesome we a carpet |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It colors, ily use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to the colors at it, I remear the colors. | t into ya t beautij table dy they can | ful onesves,ves,ves | somesome we a carpet |
| 4. T 5. I 6. T 0 7 8 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c | the wool to make it colors are the most it colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. arpet. | t into ya beautij table dy they can | yes, use it to wea | somesomesome .ve a carpet. rk and skill it |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 8 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c Dad finished a | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | yes,use it to wealow much wol | some we a carpet. rk and skill it it to Hurghada. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c Dad finished a She refused to | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work have dinner with use | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | ves, | some some ve a carpet. rk and skill it to Hurghada. e was hungry. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 8 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c Dad finished a She refused to | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | ves, | some we a carpet. rk and skill it it to Hurghada. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T o 7 to 1 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops akes to make a c Dad finished a She refused to | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work have dinner with use his teacher's advice the colors. | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | ves, | some some we a carpet. rk and skill it to Hurghada. we was hungry. I was tired. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T 0 7 8 1 2 3 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops Aser followed My mother wa | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work have dinner with use the dinner with use the dus | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | we travelled although she before I go | some some we a carpet. rk and skill it to Hurghada. we was hungry. I was tired. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T 0 7 8 4. 1 2 3 4 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on their workshops akes to make a control the sentent Dad finished a She refused to Aser followed | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to arpet. It his work have dinner with use the dinner with use the dus | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | we travelled although she before I go | we a carpet. rk and skill it it to Hurghada. e was hungry. I was tired. |
| 4. T 5. I p 6. T 0 7 8 4. 1 2 3 4 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops Aser followed My mother wa | the wool to make it colors are the most of colors. It was natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, the yarn is dry, the work arpet. It his work have dinner with use the dust the police to make the police of the work of the work of the police of the work of t | t into ya beautij table dy they can ember h | we travelled although she before I go is school. | we a carpet. rk and skill it it to Hurghada. e was hungry. I was tired. |
| 4. T 5. I 6. T 7 8 4. 1 2 3 4 | The artisans spin think the bright eople prefer dar These artisans on ther workshops These to make a company the refused to Aser followed My mother was I telephoned to | the wool to make it colors are the most k colors. It use natural vege use synthetic dyesthe yarn is dry, to the most it, I remeated the work it is teacher's advice the police whomework | tinto ya beautij table dy they can ember h | we travelled although she even though before I go is school. | we a carpet. rk and skill it to Hurghada. e was hungry. I was tired. to bed. ould do well in |

Lesson 4 Math

Multiplicution

الضريب



1. There are 15 farmers in Lama's village. Each farmer has 35 sheep. How many sheep are in Lama's village?

15 X 35 = 525

2. There are 21 weavers working in a weaving workshop. Each weaver can make 24 carpets each year. How many carpets does the workshop produce each year?

21 X 24 =

3. Hany's family has 36 geese. Each goose has 8 babies, called goslings. How many goslings are there?

Division

القسمة

1. There are 48 children in Sherif's class. His teacher wants the children to work on a project in groups of 6. How many groups do the children have to make?

48 + 6 = 8

2. Amira's hens laid 240 eggs. She wants to sell the eggs at the market. If they can put 6 eggs in each box, how many boxes do they need?

3. Amir grew 693 kilos of potatoes. He can put 3 kilos of potatoes in each sack. How many sacks does he need?

4. The potters made 6,342 pots last year. They sold the pots at 6 different markets. How many pots did they sell at each market?

.....





*Answer this problem-with fractions.

The children are going to spend $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class reading in English, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class speaking in English, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the class watching a movie. How much of the class will they spend on reading and speaking in English?



extra enalienge

Nagwa has a large loaf of bread. If she gives $\frac{1}{4}$ of the loaf to her grandparents, and $\frac{1}{2}$ to her parents, how much of the bread does she have left?



Practice Exercises

Noha : Where did you go last Friday? Hoda I went to my uncle's Noha With who did you go? Hoda I went with my..... Noha What did you see there? Hoda I saw sheep, buffalos and cows. Noha What does the buffalo give us? Hoda Milk and.....

2. Read the following, then a sewer the questions:

Games and sports are very important in our life. A sportsman can enjoy life fully and live to an old age. To become efficient in sports, you must practise them constantly. Sports and games are encouraged everywhere in Egypt. Sports make our bodies strong, prevent us from getting to fat and keep us healthy.

Sports and games are also useful for character training. In their lessons at school, pupils may love of one's country, but if each of them learns to work for his team on the football field, he will later find it natural to work for the good of his country

| A) Answer the following qu | estions : | | |
|---|---|---|--------------------|
| 1. What should you do to be | efficient in spor | ts? | |
| | | | 1000 |
| 2. What should pupils learn | at school? | | |
| *** | *** *** } *** *** *** *** *** *** *** * | 214 114 111 111 114 ++++++++++++++++++++ | |
| B. Choose the correct answer | | | |
| 3. Sports help us to be (fat - | - thin - healthy - | ill). | |
| 4. Sports and games are (go | ood - bad - little | few) for characte | er training. |
| I Timpkelitän laat wit | le words from t | h 12 mg 1 mg 2 mg 1 mg 1 mg 1 mg 1 mg 1 m | read to the second |
| homework | | daughters | school |
| Our teacher of English | was verv kind a | nd helpful, so all | |
| him. He used to come to . | | at 7 o'clock in t | ho morning to |
| give us more lessons and | heln us with on | r | ue morning to |
| couldn't do. Now , he is ab | out 50 years old | d Us has set too | which we |
| and a son. | out 30 years on | u. He has got two | *** |
| | | | |
| | Dimmir 4 may | | |
| 4. Write a paragraph of | FIPTY (50) w | ordson: A visit | to bure. |
| Guiding words: | | | |
| 4. Write a paragraph of | | | |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | – train – fami | | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | – train – fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |
| Guiding words: Last winter – visited | - train - fami | ly – a week – te | mples – tombs |

Lessons 5 & 6 **Writing & Project**

| í | | | |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | A. I see | | منتشرهم لأداد |
| | PATE SATING | eca! | TOPPES. |
| ı | The second second | - Share barrier | to depth of the party of the last |

| neighborhood | جيرة | grandparents | الاجداد |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|----------|
| Alexandria | الاسكندرية | services | خدمات |
| beautiful | جميل | wherever | حيث يكون |
| city | مدينة | favorite | مقضل |
| the Mediterranean | اليحر المتوسط | gardens | حدانق |
| population | سكان | clear | واضح |
| port | ميناء | instead of | بدلاً من |
| industry | صناعة | understand | يفهم |
| apartment | شقة | several | عديد |
| parents | الوالدان | like | مثل |
| folk | شعبي / فلكوري | dancing | رقص |

In longer texts, there is an

An introduction: which presents the general idea of the text.

The conclusion: it comes at the end to present a summary of the text's main idea and tells the reader what to do with the information you presented in your text.

- 1. Read the text about folk dancing in Egypt. Have you seen any of these dances? Read the text that Dina wrote about her city. Match the headings to the paragraphs
- a. What I Like
- b. My City
- c. My Neighborhood

Alexandria

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.



| 2. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Amrya. There are 6 people in my family: my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small eithe |
|---|
| I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day. |
| * Write a text about your city. Use Dina's text as a model. Remember to add an introduction and a conclusion to your text. Don't forget to write about: - Your city: location, population and famous places |
| · Your neighborhood : where you live and who you live with |
| · What you like about your areas: your favorite places and services |
| / |
| *************************************** |
| *************************************** |
| ************************************ |
| ************************************** |
| ************************************** |
| ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, |
| *************************************** |
| *************************************** |
| ************************************** |
| |
| |



مشروع Project

| *Use the words in the box to complete the text | | | | | | | |
|--|------|-------------|---------|------|------|--|--|
| green | cars | environment | doctors | plan | walk | | |

* What is Smart Growth?

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth:

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good public transportation and no cars.

3. I can explain crafts and heritage industries.

5. I can multiply and divide numbers.

6. I can plan smart growth for a city.

4. I use subordinating conjunctions in sentences.

- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops,markets, doctors, government offices, etc.
- There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

| | | 1 | Review | V | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|---|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| * What are | the plural | forms of the | www.ds? | | | | |
| person | buțțalo | woman | baby | child | goose | tomato | |
| | | | | | | | |
| * Write les | a sentences | . Use one of | the subare | linating cor | nunctions | m each | |
| sentence | | | | | | | |
| so th | nat | every tim | ne | while aft | | ıfter | |
| befo | re | although | | is soon as | even | even though | |
| | | *************** | 110000000000000000000000000000000000000 | | | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | |
| 11214X12245×44141 | | | | **************** | ***************** | | |
| | *********** | ***************** | ************ | . 120 240 744 244 113 1111 | ; | 200039904444000 | |
| | ************* | | | *************** | | | |
| | | SELF | -ASSESS | MENT | | | |
| * Check (| /) the box | es that are | true for y | ou; | | _ | |
| 1. I can | compare | life in the c | ity and th | e country. | | | |
| 2. I can | form and | use regula | r and irre | gular plur | al nouns. | | |





ن الإستماع في بهاية الوحدة

t. Listen and complete:

- 1. Mazen likes his city because we have a lot of
- 2. People can buy things from
- 3. One of Mazen's favorite places is Montaza
- 4. Mazen lives incity .

2. Change the part of the new of the report i whelen

- 1. A metropolitan is a (sparsely densely more) populated.
- 2. Be very (care carefully careful) when you cross the road.
- 3. Onions are (animals vegetables fruits).
- 4. "Traditional" means (new modern old).
- 5. The artisans dry wool (after before although) they use it.
- 6. I have lunch (after before as soon as) I have breakfast.
- 7. I say thank you (before after while) you give me your pen.
- 8. We'll come home by bus (although after while) we've been to town.
- 9. Smart (grow growth grown) is a way to plan new areas of a city.
- 10. Smart growth planners want to protect the (sky soil environment).
- 10. City planners (harm improve disuse) the lives of people living .
- 11. People have all of the (money services books) that they need close to their homes
- 12. There are green (spaces space) for people to enjoy in smart cities.
- 13. There's good (general old public) transportation and no cars in new cities.
- 14. I like my (city flat home) because we have a lot of services
- 15. There are beautiful (gate gardens wall) in our city .
- 16. I live with my family in an (home apartment room) in Haram, Giza.
- 17. Alexandria is a beautiful city on the (Mediterranean Red Black) sea.
- 18. There is a lot of (traffic pollution industry) in the new cities, too.

| A | В |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. My city is | a. in the south of Egypt. |
| 2. My village is | b. a densely populated. |
| 3. I didn't eat | c. so that I could win the race. |
| 4. I train hard | d. sparsely populated. |
| | e. even though I was very hungry. |

Practice Test

A. Listening

I listen and circle the current answer from a b, c or d

- 1. Waleed lives in a small village on the
 - a. lake
- b. ocean . c. sea
- d. Nile
- 2. He grows , potatoes, dates, and onions.
 - a. bananas
- b. tomatoes
- c. mangoes
- 3. There are six and two buffaloes.
 - a. goats
- b. hippos
- c. sheep
- d. donkeys

- 4. You can seein the street.
- b. dogs
- c. lizards
- d. snakes

- 1. Fareeda lives in Cairo.
- 2. It's a metropolitan area and populated.
- 3. There are more than million inhabitants
- 4. If you are a, you have to be very careful.

B. Readina

3. Read and complete the text with the words from the box : guide craft carpets weaving

My grandma took me to a spinning andworkshop so that I could learn about this craft. Theexplained how the artisans make thewhile we watched them weave.

4. Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1. Where did you go last summer?
- 2. What did you watch?
- B. Choose the correct answer:
- 3. My (grandma grandpa parents) took me to the workshop.
- 4. Weaving is a kind of (sweets drinking crafts).

The Reader

| a A. Read and write | A STATE OF THE | Market Market Committee Co | | | | |
|--|--|--|--------------------|--|--|--|
| Zeinab and her grandfather visit the shop. The picture with flower took two months from Grandfather. B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: There are | | | | | | |
| 4. Grandfather used | his | . to cut and measu | re the pieces. | | | |
| a. legs | b. eyes | c. hands | d. ears | | | |
| | C. W | riting | | | | |
| 6. Choose the correc | tanswer from | a, b, Cur d | | | | |
| 1. The artisans dry v | vool | they use | it. | | | |
| a. after | b. before | c. although | d. of | | | |
| 2. I have lunch | | I have breakfast. | | | | |
| a. after | b. so | c. as soon | d. before | | | |
| 3. I say thank you | | Voll dive me vo | IIM mon | | | |
| a. before | b. after | c. while | d. at | | | |
| 4. We'll come home | by bus | Welve | heen to town | | | |
| a. although | b. after | c. because | d. while | | | |
| No Condina 12 | | | | | | |
| A STUCK TO WORK ! | U Unafee I never l | 1 millioners | u. wittle | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more | U thaire I bered | Long and | u. witte | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more | U thaire I bered | Long and | u. withe | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more | than - <u>There a</u> | re - 20 million. | u. wille | | | |
| 1. inhabitants - more 2. you - about - <u>l'm ge</u> | than - <u>There a</u> | re - 20 million. | u. wille | | | |
| 1. inhabitants - more 2. you - about - <u>I'm ge</u> | than - <u>There a</u> | re - 20 million. e - to tell. | u. withe | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge | than - There a | re - 20 million. e - to tell. | u. wille | | | |
| 1. inhabitants - more 2. you - about - <u>I'm ge</u> | than - There a | re - 20 million. e - to tell. | u. withe | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - <u>I'm ge</u> * Guiding elements: | than - There a | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father | | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge | than - There a | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father | | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - <u>l'm ge</u> * Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There a ping - my village Grand eep - cows / grow | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk ~ cows / | like – grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There and the control of the | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk ~ cows / | like – grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There and the control of the | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk - cows / | like – grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There a ping - my village Grand eep - cows / grow | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk - cows / | like - grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There and the control of the | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk ~ cows / | like - grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There are than - There are than - There are than the constant of the co | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / mllk ~ cows / | like - grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There a ping - my village Grand eep - cows / grow | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / milk - cows / | like - grandfather | | | |
| 1. Inhabitants - more 2. you - about - I'm ge Guiding elements: Grandfather - farm / k | than - There a ping - my village Grand eep - cows / grow | re - 20 million. e - to tell. father - food / mllk ~ cows / | like - grandfather | | | |

Hi! Series

Listening Text Lesson 1

Amr lives in Giza. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than four million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also traffic jam. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful. There are many famous things in Giza such as The Pyramids, Sphinx, Cairo University. Giza has modern and ancient places.

Lesson 2

My name's Ahmed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are ten sheep and three cows. There are some donkeys in our village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese and ducks on the river.

Lesson 5

I'm Mazen . I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

Model exam listening texts

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

* Listen and complete:

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Unit 5 Resources in Our World

In this mit I will

- understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable
- · identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
- use the correct form of third person present singular verbs.
- explain different types of renewable energy sources.
- · match and correctly use pronouns.
- · recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs.
- · understand how to be a good team member.
- · write an email to apply for a job.
- · design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.

Scope and Sequence

| | | Scope and Sequence |
|--------------------------------|-----|---|
| Vocabulary | e d | Natural resources: renewable, non-renewable; coal, crude oil, fossil fuel, metal, mineral, natural gas, oil well, petroleum, plastic, soil, stone, water, wood wave power, wind power, tidal power, metropolitan, solar power, solar energy, electrical energy, mechanical energy Careers: application, career, experience, promotion, skill, talent, train |
| Language | p d | The baby cries when she's hungry. Lara did her science project on global warming. Wael did his science project on tidal power. Both children presented their projects on Thursday |
| Reading | : | A factual text about natural resources; a text about renewable energy |
| Writing | 0 0 | an email to apply for a job; notes about a design |
| Speaking | : | Describing natural resources; a discussion about teamwork |
| Listening | 0 7 | A discussion about fossil fuels; a job interview |
| Life skills | = = | Collaboration: how to be a good team member Critical thinking and creativity: design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source |
| Values | | Respect / Work ethics |
| Issues and challenges | 4 2 | Environmental responsibility / Sustainable development Entrepreneurship |
| Integrated cr curriculum to | | |







Lesson 1

Natural Resources

| خشب | تربة زداعية | حجر | معدن |
|------|-------------|-------|---------|
| | | | |
| wood | soil | stone | mineral |

| معن | ریت انیترول | sia | پلاستين |
|-------|-------------|-------|---------|
| | | | |
| metal | petroleum | water | plastic |

| natural | طبيعي | buildings | مبني |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| nature | طيعه | forests | غالت |
| resources | موارد | bridges | کبري |
| materials | مواد څام | right now | الان |
| purposes | اغراض | common | شالع |
| handle | | renewable | متجدد |
| frame | شكل / اطار | non-renewable | غير متجدد |
| ground | ارض | replace | وستيدل |
| types | انواع | run out | يقني |
| windmills | طواحين الهواء | gold | الأهب |
| falling | | silver | فضه |
| construct | يتبا ا يشي | | غدن |
| earth | كوكب الأرض | grains | حبيت |







Definitions

| materials | substances which things can be made from. | مواد خام |
|------------|--|-------------|
| nature | all the animals, plants, rocks, etc. in the world. | طبيعة |
| resource | usually { plural } a useful or valuable quality of a | country. |
| petroleum | a dark thick oil obtained from under the ground. | زيت البترول |
| renewable | a form of energy that never run out. | متجدد |
| non-renewa | ble a form of energy that can be used up. | غير متجدد |

Important Expressions

| get from | تحصل من | That's right. | هذا صحيح |
|-------------|----------|------------------|-----------|
| look around | | What about | مدا محديج |
| made of | مصنوع من | | باتنی من |
| run out | يثقذ | use something up | يستنفذ شي |
| made up of | یتکون من | | بحلب على |

Reading

Read and Asten What are severable resources.

مواردنا الطبيعية Our Natural Resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.
People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see lifferent types of them. What is your school made of? We

use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too.
What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right - a natural resource!

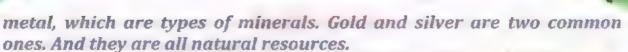
الموارد الطبيعية هي المواد التي تحصل عليها من الطبيعة. يستخدم الناس هذه المواد لأغراض مختلفة إذا نظرت حول قصلك الدراسي ، فسترى على الارجح الواعا مختلفة منهم . من ماذا صنعت مدرستك؟ نحن المنتخدم الحجر الشيد المبالي والجسور واحيانا المدارس ايضا. على ماذا تجلس الان؟ هل هي مصنوعة من الخشب؟ نعتبر المغابات والاخشاب التي تحصل عليها منهم موردا طبيعيا اخر مهما. هل بوجد اي شيء مصنوع من البلاسليك في فصلة البلاستيك مصنوع من البترول ، وهو ... هذا صحيح - مورد طبيعي!

Can you find any minerals in your classroom? What about the door handle, the window frame, or the watch your teacher is wearing? Is part of your desk or chair metal? There are many different types of









هل يمكنك العثور على أي معادن في قصلك؟ ماذا عن مقبض الباب أو إطار النافذة أو الساعة التي يرتبيّها معلمك؟ هل جزء من مكتبك أو كرسيك من المعدن؟ هناك العديد من أنواع المعدن المختلفة ، وهي أنواع من المعادن. الذهب والفضة هما عنصران شاتعان. وجميمها موارد طبيعية.

The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource.

الماء الذي تشربه في الغداء مورد طبيعي. من ابن تاتي البطاطس التي ناكلها؟ لقد نمت في الأرض ، وتتكون هذه الارض مما تسميه الترية. لذا تعم ، الترية أيضًا مورد طبيعي.

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources.

بعض الموارد هي ما تسميه المتجددة. يمكن استيدال الموارد المتجددة بشكل طبيعي عند نَفادها. تعتير الشمس والرياح والمياه المتساقطة أمثلة على الموارد المتجددة.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

أم هناك موارد غير متجددة. هذه اشياء مثل المعادن والنفط بمجرد أن نستخدمها جميعًا ، لا يمكننا الحصول على المزيد منهم هنا على الأرض.

Did you Know?

The first windmills were used in western Asia almost 3,000 years ago to grind grain and pump water.

استخدمت اول طواحين هوانية غرب اسيا منذ 3000 سنة تقريبا لطحن الحيوب وضنح المياه.



1. What are natural resources?

- 2. What's the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources?
- 3. What renewable and non-renewable resources can you find in your home?







Practice Exercises

Listen and complete

- 1. The water is a resource.
- 2. The ground is made up of
- 3. Potatoes are grown in the
- 4. renewable resources never out.

Soil

gas

petroleum

sun

Student: What is a renewable resource of energy?

Teacher: The is a renewable resource of energy. Student: How can we get plastic?

Teacher: We can get plastic from petroleum.

Student : Is a renewable resource of energy?

Teacher: No it isn't.

Student: What is ground made up of?

Teacher: It is made up of

Read and complete the text with the words below:

wind

naturally

oil

run

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be......out. The sun,and falling water are examples of renewable resources.

d Choese the correct in

- 1. Natural resources are material we get from (factories schools nature).
- 2. Look (up in around) your classroom. What can you see?
- 3. What's your school made (in of at).
- 4. We use (oil leather stone) to construct buildings.
- 5. What are you sitting (on in of)? -A chair.
- 6. Chairs, doors and windows are made of (wood sand water).
- 7. We get wood from (seas rivers forests).
- 8. Plastic is made from (petroleum stone metal).
- 9. The door (hand handle leg) is made of minerals.
- 10. Gold and silver are types of (plastic metal oil).
- 11. (Water Juice Cheese) is one of the natural resources.
- 12. The ground is made up of the (soil salt sugar).



- 13. (Renewable Non-renewable Finished) resources don't run out.
- 14. The sun, wind and water are (weak new renewable) resources.
- 15. Metals and petroleum are types of (renewable non-renewable gas) resources of energy.

5. Rearrange the following words:

- 1. get from are that we nature Natural resources materials.
- 2. to buildings stone We use construct.
- 3. any find in classroom Can you minerals your?

6. Read the passage and answer the questions:

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right - a natural resource!

Answer the following questions:

- 2. From what do we make plastic?
 Choose the correct answer:
- 3. We use stone to (construct paint draw) buildings and bridges.
- 4. We have different (shelves desks kinds) of natural sources.

| Million of the last of the las | Ald believe the same | adam - Ramanas da | ا المرسم مسلم المسلم |
|--|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| three - renewable / sun l | heat / wind - energy | / water - natural . | / never - run out |







Lesson 2

Language

| New recebulary | Dr. | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| fossil | هذر بات | heating | سخير/ ندفات |
| coal | فحم | crude oil | یت خم |
| natural gas | غز طبيعي | airplanes | عدر اب |
| a crude oil weli | سر نقط هام | deep | عميق |
| however | و مع سف | Earth | كوكب الارض |
| energy | در ق | generate | بولد |
| fossil fuels | الوقود الحفرى | electricity | کهر باء |
| global warming | الاحتباس الحراري | cooking | طخ |
| petroleum | البت المقرول | died | مات |
| change into | بتحول الى | temperature | مرحة الحرارة |
| create | غنف | environment | نسة |
| burned | محترق | problems | مشكن |
| Tlimate | مناخ | worse | رميو ، |
| greenhouse gases | | | غازات الاحتساس الد |
| | D - C ::: | | |

Definitions

| | Dejimuons |
|------------------|---|
| fossil fuels | fuels such as gas, coal and oil, formed underground from plant and animal remains |
| greenhouse gases | a gus which couses the greenhouse effect, especially carbon dioxide. عزات الاحتبس الحراري |
| global warming | a gradual increase in world temperatures caused by polluting . |
| a crude oil | oil in a natural state . پيت خام |
| natural gas | gas, found underground, which is used as a fuel. غز طبيعي |

* Did you know?

Today, around 80% of the energy used around the world comes from fossil fuels.

اليوم ، يأتي حو لي 80٪ من نظاف المستخدمة حول العالم من الوقود





Read again and answer the questions :

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Crude oil is taken out of the ground and made into petroleum, which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Coal is taken from deep inside the Earth and it is used to generate electricity. Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.

Millions of years ago, when the plants and animals that used to live on the Earth died, they lay deep inside the Earth. After millions of years, they changed into fossil fuels which we can use today to create energy. However, when the fossil fuels are burned, they create greenhouse gases. These gases collect in the temperature. They are very bad for the environment. They help to create global warming and they make the problems of climate change worse.

- 1. What are the three fossil fuels?
- 2. Why is coal important for industry?
- 3. What did fossil fuels use to be millions of years ago?
- 4. Why are greenhouses gases bad for the environment?

Practice Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1. Fossil fuels are resources.
 - a renewable b. non-renewable c. old d. modern
- 2. Oil, coal and natural gas are fuels...
 - a. fossii b. made c. soil
- 3. We get petroleum from oil .
 - a. soft b. hard c. thick d. crude

d. sea

- 4. Natural gas is used in our homes for and cooking .
 - a. building b. painting c. heating d. drawing

Read and complete the test with words from the box fossil natural greenhouse Eart





...... fuels which we can use today to create energy. However, when the fossil fuels are burned, they create gases. 3. Choose the correct answer: 1. (Fossil fuels - Sunlight - Wind) are a non-renewable resource. 2. Fossil fuels are plants and (stones - animals - water) under the ground millions of years ago. 3. Oil, (cool - coat- coal) and natural gas are fossil fuels. 4. (Crude - Rude - Ruled) oil is made into petroleum. 5. Buses, cars and airplanes need (coal - petroleum - water) to go. 6. (Coal - Stone - Cola) is used to generate electricity. 7. Coal is used in our homes for heating and (cleaning - washing - cooking). 8. Millions of years ago, plants and animals underground changed into (fossil fuels-plastic - metal). 9. Burned fossil fuels create (greenhouse - bluehouse - redhouse) gases. 10. The climate changed because of global (heating - warming - boiling).

| war ming - bonneg). |
|--|
| 4. Recorder the following words to make meaning his accessor |
| 1. comes - energy - Most - fossil - from - fuels. |
| V 100 NAC 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 10 |
| 2. is - generate - to - used - electricity - <u>Coal</u> . |
| 4 4 4 4 5 7 4 5 7 5 7 5 7 5 7 5 7 5 7 5 |
| 3. gas - is used - for - Natural - heating. |
| 118 A41 450-110 111 112 121 111 411 1120 500 511 411 1120 511 MARCH 111 NAD 511 111 NAD 511 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 11 |
| 5. Write a paragraph of FIFTT words on : Fossil fuels |
| Guiding words: |
| plants and animals - lay - earth - changed - fossil |
| DOR BER GREWEN DOE DIE GROOGERSDE DEE DEE EEG 200 APP MEE EEG EEG PEE DON HOG HET EEG MAN DE GREGED DE GEGEN DE DE BEG AND DE BEG AN |
| |
| |
| |





Grammar

| + 5 | + es | + 1es | + es |
|------------------------------------|--|---|---|
| most verbs معظم الأفعال | verbs that end in - s -z, -ch, sh, x الأفعال التي تشتهي بـ -s - y s و -ch و -ch و -z- | verbs that end in a consonant and -y الافعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن ۲۰ | verb that end m= الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ O |
| visits - plays - speaks - reads | washes - watches - | Carries – cries studies | goes- does |

Student's book Exercises

| Total Line | | | | | of at the L | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|--|------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. The bab | y | wh | en she's h | ungry. | (c | ry) |
| 2. Youssef | 's dad is a | mechanic. | Не | | cars. (f | ix) |
| 3. Talia so | metimes | | TV af | ter school | | vatch) |
| 4. My fami | | | | | | |
| 5. Magdy | 2 8 8 6 d m 3 m m b 1 + d b 3 m m | his har | id when h | e | ,his | exercises. |
| | | | | | | se / finish) |
| 6. Our cat | | | | | | rink) |
| | | The Party of the P | | | | A Company |
| correct | orn of the | verbe | | | | |
| catch | do | dry | eat | finish | go | hrush |
| heln | lrice | 24499 | 100 | and a | seems le | |

| Gameela 1.wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she 2 |
|--|
| her face. Then she 3 her breakfast and 4. |
| her teeth. She 5 to school at 7:30. School |
| 6 at 2 o'clock. She 7 the bus to go home. |
| Then she 8 her homework. Sometimes she 9 |
| her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis 10 and 11. |
| the dishes with his father. |
| Her family 12 a movie after dinner. Before going to |
| bed, she 13her mom and dad goodnight. |







Practice Exercises

- 1. He (go goes going) to school by bus.
- 2. They (walk walks walking) to the club every day.
- 3. She never (do -does -doing) her homework at night
- 4. Birds (fly flies flying) high in the sky.
- 5. (He She We) like English stories.
- 6. (You She I) knows everything about solar panels.
- 7. I (watch watches watching) TV every night.
- 8. The fish (use uses using) its gills to breathe.
- 9. Lots of sheep (eat eats eating) grass on the farm.
- 10. He often (catch catches catching) fish from the stream.
- 11. She (does do did) her homework in the evening.
- We usually (finish finishes finished) school at two pm. every day.
- 13. The bird often (fly flying flies) above the tree.
- 14. He usually (hrushes brush brushed) his teeth in the morning.
- 15. The children often (used use uses) colors to paint a picture.
- 16. Artisans usually (dries drying dry) the wool before using it.
- 17. This factory (heat heating heats) the machines by natural gas .
- 18. Yasser never (studies studied study) with his friends.
- 19. Heba doesn't (speaks speak spoke) English well.
- 20. They (doesn't didn't don't) go to The Red sea.

Lesson 3

الطاقة المتجددة Renewable energy

| طاقة الموج | طاقة الرياح | الطاقة الشمسية | طاقة المد و الجزر |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|
| | | | |
| wave power | wind power | solar power | tidal power |
| New vocabulary : | 8 | | |
| road | طريق | question | سوال |
| desert | صحراء | renewable | متجدد |
| usually | عادة | electricity | كهرباء |
| sunny | مشمس | burn | يحترق |
| dusty | مترب / معفر | trip | رحلة |
| lizard | سحلية | excited | منعس |
| sunshine | اشعة الشمس | solar panels | الواح شمسية |
| workers | عمال | engineers | مهندسين |
| trucks | شاهنات | perfect | اقصل / مثالي |
| solar farm | مزرعة شمسية | collect | يجمع |

Reading

الالواح الشمسية في الصحراء Solar Panels in the Desert

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert, it is usually hot, sunny and dusty on the road.

يذهب سليم إلى المدرسة كل يوم. الطريق بجوار الصحراء. عادة ما يكون الجو حارا ومضمسا وم تربا على الطريق.

Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine.

العام الماضي ، لم يكن هناك شيء في الصحراء. احيانًا كان سليم يرى سحلية ، لكنه في أغلب الاحيان كان يرى الصحور وأشعة الشمس.

Now things are different. He sees lots of workers and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm.

الان الامور مختلفة. برى الكثير من العمال والشاحثات في الصحراء. انهم يبنون مزرعة شمسية.









At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question. 'What is renewable energy?'

يسأل معلم سليم القصل سؤالاً في المدرسة ،. "ما هي الطاقة المتجددة؟"

Seleem puts his hand up. 'Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out,' he said.

يرفع سليم يده. وقال "الطاقة المتجددة من الهوارد التي لا مثقد".

'Very good,' said Mr Ali. 'We need to make electricity. We can burn fossil fuels like oil and gas, but they will run out. We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. Tomorrow we will go on a short school trip to learn more about renewable energy here in Aswan.'

قال مستر على: "جيد جدا". نحن بحاجة إلى توليد الكهرباء. يمكننا حرق الوقود الحفري مثل النفط والغاز ، لكنهم سيغنون. يمكننا أيضا إنتاج الكهرباء من مصادر متجددة مثل الرياح والماء. سنذهب غدا في رحلة مدرسية قصيرة لمعرفة المزيد عن الطاقة المتجددة هنا في أسوان.

The next day, Seleem and his class are very excited. Mr Ali takes them to the new solar farm. They meet the workers.

في اليوم التالي ، كان سليم وقريقه متحمسون للغاية. ياخذهم مستر علي الى مزّرعة الطاعة الشّمسية الجديدة. يقابلون العمال.

Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers.

One of the engineers tells the class, 'We will have more electricity in the city soon, and in your school too! We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes.'

قال أحد المهندسين للفصل: "سيكون لدينا المزيد من الكهرباء في المدينة قريبًا ، وفي مدرستكم ابضا الدينا الكثير من أشعة الشمس في الصحراء ، لذا فهذا هو المكان المتالي لمزرعة الطاقة الشمسية. تجمع الالواح الشمسية الطاقة من الشمس ويمكننا تعويلها إلى كهرباء لمنازلنا.

Read again and choose (T) true or (F) false:

| 1. Seleem lives in Alexandria. | T | F |
|--|---|---|
| 2. The weather is usually hot and sunny in the desert. | T | F |
| 3. The solar farm was built last year. | T | F |
| 4. The class goes on a trip to the new solar farm. | T | F |
| 5. Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. | T | F |
| 6. Trucks at the solar farm collect energy from the sun. | T | F |





We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of

we can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy.

لا مكتنا تدمير الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعكتنا بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعيره، من نوع الم بوع اخر. وهذا ما يسمى بنقل الطاقة. بعيره، من نوع الم بوع الم

عندما نستخدم الألواح الشمسية لتحميع ضوء الشمس ، تتحول الطاقة الشمسية الى طاقة كهرياسية.

When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.



Practice Exercises

trip sun resources for

2. Choose the correct answer.

- 1. There's lots of dust in the air. It's a (dusty perfect ramy) day.
- 2. The sun is shining. It's a (dusty rainy sunny) day.
- 3. There are lots of (chefs-workers-doctors) in the factory.
- 4. Renewable energy never (walks hops runs) out.
- 5. We can (burn drink eat) fossil fuels.
- 6. Wind and water are (non-renewable renewable weak) energy.
- 7. We get energy from (polar caller solar) farms.
- 8. The workers are putting solar (panels plates pots) in the desert.
- 9. The truck is a large (train ship car).
- 10. (Engineers Doctors Actors) design and make solar panels.
- 11. This is the (perfect present past) place for a solar farm.







12. The solar panels collect energy from the (moon - sun - wind).

| 3. Read and complete the gap's from the list : |
|--|
| transfer electrical marale |
| transfer electrical panels change |
| We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of |
| energy to another kind. This is calledof energy. When we |
| use solarto collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned |
| into encountration and an encountration energy. |
| |
| Our family went to spend two weeks' holiday in Alexandria. One day, |
| asked my father to take us to the sea museum. There, we saw many |
| different kinds of animals of the sea. I was very happy to see the most enormous animals of the sea such as the shark, the blue whale, the killer |
| whale and the octopus. The blue whale is the biggest animal in the world. |
| The shark is the most dangerous animal because it can smell blood and |
| swim towards it . An octopus can catch divers who dive deep in the sea . It |
| was easy for me to know the shapes and names of those animals because I |
| nave a good idea about them in my English book , but I knew more on |
| seeing them. |
| a) Answer the following questions: |
| 1. Where can we see many different animals of the sea? |
| ● P P 日本本 大田中 日々え キング トンコ モロイ 付出者 同くり トルロ 子の日 F 2 全 が出た ロマー とれた 子の田 田本寺 みろか 上名 たませ を担保 自会 T トルル これが 元 2 日本 |
| 2. What is the biggest animal in the world? |
| |
| (c) Choose the correct answer: |
| 3. An octopus can catch who dive deep in the sea . |
| a) drivers b) divers c) sailors d) swimmers |
| 4. The shark is the most dangerous animal because it can smell |
| a) flowers b) food c) smake d) blood |
| The state of the s |
| -ulang words: |
| - Maria Moras. |
| important - sportsman - make - strong - fat - healthy |
| October professional profession |
| 어마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마마 |
| |
| |
| ・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・ |
| 1mm you also you have any hand adopt proposed that have a hand to be a hard to be a |

Lesson 4

ضمائر صفات الملكية Possessive adjectives تم الشرح القاعدة في الوحدة الثالثة

| Subject | Possessive adjective | | |
|---------|----------------------|----------------|--|
| He | his | 4 | |
| She | her | 4 | |
| It | its | 4 | |
| You | your | 16 | |
| We | our | ti. | |
| They | their | r 4 | |
| I | my | 4 | |

Practice Exercises

- 1.Read these sentences. The nouns are in green and their pronouns are in purple. Circle the pronouns, and draw an arrow from them to their nouns.
- 1. Lara did her science project on global warming.
- 2. We presented her project to the class.
- 3. Wael did his science project on tidal power.
- 4. He presented his project to the class.
- 5. Both children presented their projects on Tuesday.
- 6. Neither of the children was nervous about their presentations.
- 7. Each of the children practiced their presentations at home.
- 8. At the end of the presentation, someone raised their hand to ask a question.
- 2.Complete the gaps with the correct words from (his her their):

Amir and Amira are twins. They worked together and did 1. science project on renewable energy.

They presented 2......project to the class on Thursday.

Amir presented 3.part on solar power.

Amira presented 4.part on wave power.







Both children did a good job in 5.presentation.

Neither of the twins forgot what they wanted to say in 6.presentation.

No one raised 7.hand to ask any questions.

- 4. Choose the correct answer:
- 1. He took (his her their) bag with him.
- 2. They did (his their her) science homework yesterday.
- 3. She presented (his our her) project on global warming.
- 4. Both boys brush (their-her his) teeth every day.
- 5. Neither of the children is happy with (his their her) marks.
- 6. Each of the workers wrote (his their -our) lessons.
- 7. We cleaned (my our their) house every two days.
- 8. I'm looking for (his -her-my) book.

4., We get wood from

- 9. You shouldn't skip (your their his) breakfast.
- 10. It sleeps in (his her its) cage.

5. Read and complete the text with the words below:

desert lizard next Seleem walks to school every day. The road isto the desert. It is usually hot,and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine. 6. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1. Natural resources are materials that we get from b. fossil c. factory d. nature 2. We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and c. baskets a, schools b. chairs d. clothes 3. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of? b. stone C. wood d. metal





c. ocean

d. river

Lesson 5

Teamwork العمل الجماعي

| New vocabulary | | ^* | |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| success | تجاح | reliable | جدير بالثقة |
| successful | ناجح | flexible | مرن |
| communicate | يتو اصل | respect | احترام |
| worried | قلق / منزعج | address | عنوان |
| solver | هلألالمشاكل | sender | راسل |
| feelings | مشاعر | start with | یپدا ہے |
| sensitive | حساس | dear | عزيز / غالي |
| polite | مؤدب / مهذب | yours sincerely | المخلص لك |
| actively | بتشاط | designer | مصمم |
| brainstorm | عصف ڏهڻي | individual | فردي |
| members | اعضاء | motorcycle | موتوسيكل |
| results | لتلنج | share | يشارك |
| invent | يفترع | problems | مشاكل |
| public | علم | spaceship | سفيئة فضاء |
| transportation | مواصلات | at least | على الأقل |
| ferry | محية | explain | يشرح |
| solutions | حلول | imagination | خيال |
| stay calm | ايقي هادناً | creativity | ابداع |
| get upset | ينزعج | relying on | م علمد علي |
| positive | ايجابي | difficult | مدهب |
| supportive | مدعم | open about | منفتح بخصوص |
| collaborate | يتعاون | eco-friendly vehicle | عربة صديقة للبينة |

Reading

* Why do you think these ideas are important when working in a team? How to Be a Good Team Member

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Here are 5 points to remember when you're working in a team.

العدل الجماعي مهم جدًا لنجاح المشروع. هذا خمس نقاط لهتذكرهم عندما تعمل في فريق.

3.

4.

6.

Communicate - Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite

التواصل - شارك بأفكارك ومشاعرك مع أعضاء الفريق الأخرين. يجب أن تكون منفتمًا بشأن ما تشعر به حيال المشروع. تنكر أن تكون حسامنا لما قد يشعر به الْآخرون. يجب ان تكون مؤدبًا أيضًا.





Collaborate - Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to

التعاون- العمل بنشاط مع أعضاء فريقك للمصول على أفضل النتقج. قد تكون لديك فكرة جيدة ، ولكن تلكد من الاستماع الأكار

Be responsible- Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. If you're finding your

طي قدرالمسؤولية. تذكر أن تكمل الجزء الخاص بك من المشروع. يعتمد أعضاء القريق عليك للقيام بدورك. إذا كنت تجد

Solve problems- Instead of getting worried about problems, be a دورك صعبًا ، فنطلب المساعدة problem solver. Brainstorm many different solutions to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

من المشاكل - بدلاً من القلق بشان المشاكل ، كن حلالا للمشكلات, قم بالعصف الذهني للعبد من الحلول المختلفة للمشكلات مع

Have a positive attitude - There might be some difficult times when أعضاء فريقك واتفقها غنى العل الأفضل. working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful. من ثو موافليجلي - قد تكون هناك بعض الأوقات الصعبة عند العمل مقار ابق هلانًا ولا تنزعج إذا كنت إيجابيا ، فلنك ستساعد تفسك وأعضاء الفريق الأغرون أن تكونوا أكثر تجلخا

Practice Exercises

- 1. Here are some more important ideas to remember when doing teamwork. Order them from 1 (the most important) to 5 (the least important):
- Be supportiveBe flexible
- Be reliableShow respect Say when you're wrong

- 1. Teamwork is very important for the (success failure worse) of a
- 2. Share your (tables tablets- ideas) and feelings with the other team
- 3. You should be (close open shut) about how you're feeling about a
- 4. Always be (rude bad polite) to older people.
- 5. Actively work together with your team members the best (resorts -
- 6. (Do Say Make) sure to share others' ideas.
- 7. (Remember Remind Remain) to complete your part of a project. You shouldn't forget that.



Lesson 5

Teamwork الجماعي

| New vocabulary . | | 14 | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| success | نجاح | reliable | جدير بالثقة |
| successful | ناجح | flexible | مرن |
| communicate | يتواصل | respect | اجترام |
| worried | قلق / منزعج | address | عثوان |
| solver | <u>حلاً لالمشاكل</u> | sender | راسل |
| feelings | مشاعر | start with | پیدا ہے |
| sensitive | حساس | dear | عزيز / غائي |
| polite | مؤدب / مهذب | yours sincerely | المخلص لك |
| actively | بنشاط | designer | مصمم |
| brainstorm | عصف ذهني | individual | . فردي |
| members | اعضاء | motorcycle | موتوسيكل |
| results | نتدج | share | بشارك |
| invent | يفترع | problems | مشاكل |
| public | علم | spaceship | سقينة فضاء |
| transportation | مواصلات | at least | على الاقل |
| ferry | معية | explain | يشرح |
| solutions | حلول | imagination | خيال |
| stay calm | ايقي هادياً | creativity | بداع |
| get upset | ينزعج | relying on | رعتمد على |
| positive | ايجلبي | difficult | صعب |
| supportive | مدعم | open about | منتتح يخصوص |
| collaborate | يتعاون | eco-friendly vehicle | عربة صديقة للبينة |

Reading

* Why do you think these ideas are important when working in a team?

How to Be a Good Team Member Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Here are 5

points to remember when you're working in a team.

عمل الجماعي مهم جدًا لنجاح المشروع. هذا خمس نقاط المتذكر هم عندما تعمل في فريق. Communicate - Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite

تواصل - شارك باقتارك ومشاعرك مع أعضاء القريق الأخرين. يجب أن تكون متفتحًا بشأن ما تشعر به حيال المشروع. ــكر أن تكون حساسًا لما قد يشعر به الأخرون. يجب أن تكون مؤنبًا أيضًا. Primary 4 Hi! Series Unit 5

Collaborate - Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to others' ideas too.

التعاون- العمل بنشاط مع أعضاء فريقك للحصول على أفضل النتائج. قد تكون لديك فكرة جيدة ، ولكن تأكد من الاستماع لافكر الآخرين أبطنا.

Be responsible- Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. If you're finding your role difficult, ask for help.

على قدر المسؤولية. تذكر أن تكمل الجزء الخاص بك من المشروع، يعتمد أعضاء القريق عليك للقيام بدورك. إذا كنت تجد دورك صبحًا ، قطلب المساعدة.

solve problems- Instead of getting worried about problems, be a problem solver. Brainstorm many different solutions to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

حل المشاكل ، بدلاً من القلق بشأن المشاكل ، كن حلالا للمشكلات. قم بالعصف الذهني للعديد من الحلول المختلفة للمشكلات مع أعضاء قريقك والقوور على الحل الأفضل.

riave a positive attitude - There might be some difficult times when working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful.

کن نو موظلیجین - قد تکون هنگ بعض الأوقات الصعبة عند العمل مغا. ابق هادنا ولا تتزعج. إذا كنت ابجبینا ، فلك مشماع اللویق الأخرون أن تكونوا أكثر نجاها.

Practice Exercises

- Here are some more important ideas to remember when doing teamwork.

 Order them from 1 (the most important) to 5 (the least important):
- Be supportiveBe flexible
- Be reliableShow respect

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Teamwork is very important for the (success failure worse) of a project.
- 2 Share your (tables tablets- ideas) and feelings with the other team members.
- 3 You should be (close open shut) about how you're feeling about a project.
- 4 Always be (rude bad polite) to older people.
- 5 Actively work together with your team members the best (resorts results rebels).
- (Do Say Make) sure to share others' ideas.
- (Remember Remind Remain) to complete your part of a project.

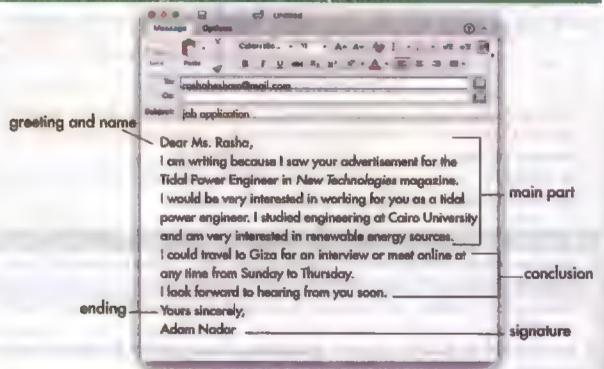
 You shouldn't forget that.





- 8. Team (n<mark>umbers members digits</mark>) are relying on you to do your part.
- 9. Be a problem (seller caller solver). Solve it yourself.
- 10. Stay (kite calm car) and don't get upset.
- 11. If you are (positive negative affirmative), you will be more successful.
- 12. We get energy from (polar solar caller) farms.
- 13. She never (does do doing) her homework at night
- 14. I (watches watching watch) TV every night.
- 15. Plastic is made from (petroleum stone metal).
- 16. (Non-renewable Renewable Finished) resources don't run out.
- 17. Both boys brush (her his their) teeth every day.
- 18. I'm looking for (yours my hers) book.
- 19. This is a (perfect present past) place for a solar farm.

4. Read the email again. Answer the questions:



- 1. Who is writing the email?
- 2. Who is the email for?
- 3. Why is he writing the email?

| 4. Read and comple | te the tent wi | th words from | t that have | - |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|---|-------------|
| worries | hobby | positive | project | |
| Nour works for an | engineering co | omnany . She li | | |
| team members. She i | S | helpful a | nd kind Shawarb | en. |
| hard but she often | abo | ut problems th | at she can't solve | 72 |
| Sometimes, she does | n't finish her p | part of a | Mind tall 1 30176. | |
| | Read | | | |
| * Read the job advertise | | | for the job | |
| | ئرفة: | دًا إلكترونيًا للتقدم للوة | رأ إعلان الوظيفة. اكتب بريا | * اقر |
| We at | | الف مهندسين /eers | | |
| We are looking for en | gineers to desi | an vehicles tha | t run on renewahl | |
| energy sources. Are yo | ou interested in | r clean eneray? | Are you creative? | |
| Then contact: | | , | in o you creative? | |
| ددة. هل أنت مهتم بالطاقة | بمصادر الطاقة المتج | يم المركبات التي تعمل »: | ن نبحث عن مهندسین لتصم یفهٔ؟ هل انت میدع ؟ تواصر | نحر التظ |
| Mr. Ra | my Bakhoum, <u>j</u> | Rambakh@ma | | |
| | | | يد رامي يلغوم ، ail.com | السا |
| ***************************** | | | | |
| • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | |
| | | 9 40 1 1 2 2 5 11 4 4 4 7 6 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 | | **** |
| | | | | P 491 |
| 734466304660 | | . 488 640 484 484 484 484 484 484 484 484 484 4 | | 4488 |
| IV-155445 | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | | | |
| | | ******************** | *************** | |
| | 4 | **************** | ********************** | |
| *Writing tip! | | | | |
| Remember to add the | e email addres | s of the sender | Start with | |
| 'Dear,' and end you | ur email with | Yours sincerely | , , | |
| Say what you want to | o write about i | n the main par | t. | |
| | ر ابدأ يعبارة | لبريد الإلكتروتي للعرسل | تذكر أن تضيف عنوان ال | |
| | | بعيارة "المخلص لك". | "عزيزي" ، وانتهي | |
| | | ي الجزء الربيسي. | فل ما تريد الكتابة عنه ف | |





Practice Exercises

| | order |
|-------|---|
| | New message |
| | To |
| i | subject |
| | Yours sincerely |
| | Nadia Sayed |
| | Dear Mr Kamal |
| | I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel |
| | engineer at Cairo University . I worked as a junior engineer on |
| | the Benban Solar Park for one year. |
| Į | I could travel forward to Cairo for an Interview or meet online |
| | time from Monday to Friday. |
| | I look forward to hearing from you soon. I'm writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar |
| | |
| ŀ | Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies website. |
| L | send |
| | Read the email and curre i (true) or i (false): |
| | |
| | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Catro. |
| | |
| | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. |
| | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Catro. 2 She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. |
| | Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. |
| | Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. Nadia would like to have an interview. |
| | Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. |
| 1 | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. 2 She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. 3 She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. 4 Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. 5 Nadia would like to have an interview. Read and choose: |
| 1 | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. 2 She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. 3 She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. 4 Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. 5 Nadia would like to have an interview. Read and choose: You write "yours sincerely" in the |
| 1 | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. 2 She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. 3 She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. 4 Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. 5 Nadia would like to have an interview. Read and choose: You write "yours sincerely" in the |
| 1 2 2 | 1 Nadia Sayed lives in Cairo. 2 She is writing an email to Mr Kamal. 3 She would like to work on Benban Solar Park. 4 Nadia doesn't have any experience as an engineer. 5 Nadia would like to have an interview. Read and choose: You write "yours sincerely" in the |

مشروع Project مشروع Reading

* Read the text and underline what you have to do:

It's time for you to become a designer of an eco-friendly vehicle. You can choose to design a vehicle for individual use, such as a car, a motorcycle, or a boat. Or you might decide to invent a vehicle for public transportation, like a ferry, a bus, an airplane, or even a spaceship. But your vehicle must run on at least one renewable energy resource. Explain why it's eco-friendly. Remember to use your imagination and creativity!

حان الوقت لكي تصبح مصممًا لسيارة صديقة للبينة. يمكنك اختيار أن تصمم مركبة للاستخدام الفردي ، مثل سيارة أو دراجة نارية أو قارب, أو قد تقرر ان تغترع مركبة للنقل العلم ، مثل عبارة أو حافلة أو طائرة أو حتى مركبة فضائية, لكن يجب أن تعمل مركبتك على مصدر طاقة متجدد واحد على الأقل. اشرح سبب كونها صديقة للبينة. تذكر أن تستخدم خيالك وإبداحك!

Review Practice Exercises

| 1 Work w | ith a partner and explain the difference between : |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. WOIK W | |
| | renewable and non-renewable resources |
| | |
| | fossil fuels and renewable energy sources |
| *********** | *************************************** |
| | |
| ************* | A 545 141 151 144 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 |
| |) |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | *************************************** |
| ************* | *************************************** |
| | |
| The Particular of The | |

| go | mix | wash | watch | work |
|------|---|----------------------|---|---|
| goes | *************************************** | 44540000000000000000 | *************************************** | *************************************** |
| eat | pass | play | study | do |
| | ************************ | *********** | 247 441 101 111 111 111 | |





SELF-ASSESSMENT

- * Check (🗸) the boxes that are true for you :
 - I can understand the difference between renewable and nonrenewable resources.
 - 2 I can identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
- 3 I can use the correct form of third person singular verbs.
- 4 I can explain different types of renewable energy sources.
- 5 I can match and correctly use pronouns.
- 6 I can recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs.
- 7 I can be a good team member.
- 8 I can write an email to apply for a job.
- 9 I can design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.

Practice Test

A. Listening

and alrele the currectangeer from a by cord is very important for the success of a project. a. Friends b. Teamwork c. Brothers d. Sisters 2. Share your and feelings with the other team members.

- a. ideas b. books c. bags
- d. food 3. You should be about how you're feeling about a project.
- a. close b. bad c. nervous d. open
- 4. You might have aidea.
- a. bad b. weak c. good d. short

historia de la maistra de la constitución de la con

- 1. Renewable resources don't..... out.
- 2. The sun, wind and water are resources.
- 3.and petroleum are non-renewable resources.
- 4. Once we have non-renewable up. We can't get any.





| | B. Rec | ading | |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 3. Read and roug | detecthe text est | ib thá murdsfrai | u thu bans |
| guide | craft | carpets | weaving |
| | ok me to a spinni | | |
| so that I could lear | n about this craft | t. The | explained how |
| the artisans make | thev | while we watched | them weave. |
| 4. Read the passa | | | 100 V5 |
| | ou to become a de | | - |
| You can choose to | | | |
| motorcycle, or a b | _ | | |
| public transportat | | | |
| spaceship. But you | | | |
| energy resource. I | | co-friendly. Reme | mber to use your |
| imagination and c | | | |
| A. Answer the follow | | | |
| 1. What are public | transportations | ? | |
| 2. If you are a designment? | gner of an eco-fri | endly vehicle . Wl | nat will you |
| *************************************** | 414 | | |
| B. Choose the corre | ct answer: | | |
| 3. To be a designer | | | |
| 4. A ferry, a bus, an | | e (private – gener | al – public) |
| transportations | s. The R | andan | |
| A. Read and wr | ue T. Loue or F (| | |
| | | | |
| Grandfather was | | | () |
| 2. Zeinab thought | | | ya. () |
| - Choose the correct | | | |
| a. mother | | | d sistan |
| 2. Zeinab thought | | | d. sister |
| a. mother | | c. father | d. friends |
| a. mother | D. DI OCHEI | t. father | u. II lenus |

C. Writing

| 6 Chassa the reserved increase from a U. a or th |
|--|
| 1. Both boys brush teeth every day. |
| a. her b. his beautiful c. him and the d. their |
| 2. I'm looking for book. |
| a. ours and b. my was the c. hers was a d. me |
| 3. She never her homework at night. |
| a. does b. do c. done d. doing |
| 4. I TV every night. |
| a. watch b. watches c. watching d. are watching |
| 7. Order the words to make correct sentences . |
| 1. never - out - resources - Renewable- runs. |
| 2. your - of - is - What- school - made? |
| g. Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words on: |
| Solar energy |
| * Guiding elements: (sunlight - cheap / not - polluting / solar - desert / sunny - place / engineers - build) |
| *************************************** |
| *************************************** |
| 4 - 1 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 |
| 644101401111111111111111111111111111111 |
| |





Listening Texts Lesson 1

The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some natural resources are renewable. They never run out.

Lesson 2

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Crude oil is taken out of the ground and made into petroleum, which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Coal is taken from deep inside the Earth and it is used to generate electricity. Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.

Lesson 4

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource.

Model exam listening texts

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Here are to remember when you're working in a team.

Communicate - Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You be polite too.

Actively work together with your team members the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to others' ideas too.

* Listen and complete:

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Unit 6 Let's work

- talk about different kinds of transportation.
- make predictions about the future.
- · understand future tech jobs.
- use punctuation marks.
- · learn to use search engines on the internet.
- create strong passwords and passphrases.
- write a well-organized paragraph.
- create a business plan.

Scope and Sequence

- Transportation: air, pipe, rail, road, water Vocabulary :
 - career, podcast, search engine, browser, specific, passphrase, characters, relaxing, containers, Suez Canal, ship's captain,
 - wave, entrepreneurs
- People will travel to Mars for vacation in 2052. Language
 - My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.
 - Punctuation marks: comma, exclamation point, period,
 - question mark, apostrophe
- A literary text about economic activity; a factual text about Reading
 - passwords; a paragraph about natural resources
- : A diagram about tech jobs; structuring a paragraph; a chart Writing
 - to make a plan
- Asking and answering about types of transportation; Speaking
 - presenting a business plan
- Children talking about transportation; a podcast about Listening
 - tech jobs; information about search engines
- : Collaboration, accountability and decision making: creating Life skills
 - and presenting a business plan
- : Independence Values
- Citizenship / Entrepreneurship Issues and
- Technological awareness challenges
- : Social Studies: transportation services Integrated crosscurriculum topics Career education: making a business plan ICT: search engines and strong passwords

Lesson 1

TRANSPORTATION

النقل والمواصلات



السكك الحديدية



الجو

الإثابيب











road

rail

water

air

pipes

| 4 | | | |
|--|------|------|--|
| | | | |
| Account to the last of the las | | | |

| Kinds of | انواع من | government | حكومة |
|----------|----------|----------------|--------------|
| travel | يسافر | electric train | قطار کهریائی |
| ferry | معدية | train line | خط سكة حديد |
| boat | مرکب | airplane | طانرة |
| goods | بضائع | transport | ينقل |

Did you know?



The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria.

Ask and answer:



Have you ever traveled on a train?

Where did you go?

Yes, 1 have.

I went to ...



Did you know?



The Suez Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.

يبلغ طول قتاة السويس الآن 193 كيلومترا، وحرضها 205 مترا وعمقها 24 مترا. بدا العمل بها عام 1859 واستغرقت 10 سنوات







Practice Exercises

1. Fomplete the dialogue with words from the box:

Where month attractions temples

Loay : Have you ever traveled on a train?

Amr : Yes, I have?

Amr : I went to Luxor.

Loay : Whatdid you see there?

Amr : The Valley of the Kings and

Loay : How long did you stay there?

Amr : A week .

2. Characa the compact analysis

- 1. Adam likes to sit (front next behind) to the window.
- 2. People in new desert towns will get water from (pipes rivers -lakes).
- 3. The government will build new electric (bus taxi train).
- Ancient Egyptians used different kinds of (transportations ports sites).
- 5. Have you ever been (on by of) a train?
- 6. Have you ever (bought traveled crashed) on an airplane
- 7. Have you ever taken a river (bridge bike ferry).
- 8. The first train (line road canal) in Egypt opened in 1854.

3. Rearrange the following sentences:

- 1. did you go Where.
- 2. kilometers long The Suez Canal is 193.
- 3. has kinds of many transportations Egypt.

Read and complete the text with the words below :

finish wide Suez opened



Lesson 2 LANGUAGE

المستقبل البسيط Future simple

تكرينه : Form

+ will ('ll) + inf.

- I will visit my grandpa next Friday .
- They will study maths next year.

Usage: استخدامه

- The government . The sovernment an electric train in Cairo next year.
- My father and a villa next month.
- * I will go to the club tomorrow.
- Airplanes was solar energy in the future.
- People to Mars for vacation in 2052.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

| tomorrow | غدا | soon | \$10 |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------|----------|
| Next (week - monthetc.) | القادم | | اعتقد أن |
| In the future | في المستقبل | | امل ان |
| In future time (2035 – 2052) | في الفترة القادمة | one day | يوما ما |

- People will be under water cities in 2045.
- I think smart mobile smaller.

Negative : النفي

+ will not (won't) + inf.

- My parents a self-driving car next year.
- She will be wisit us tomorrow.

Note

Will = 'll will not = won't

Question: السؤال ب هل

inf. ?

- to the Moon one day? Yes, I will / No , I won't.
- Will Adel play tennis next Friday? Yes, he will / No, he won't.

السوال باداة استفهام Wh-question:

inf. + الفاعل + will + اداة الاستفهام

- How will you use English in the future?
- What will you do when you're an adult? Where will you live?

Practice exercises

1 Chean the orrict answer

- 1. Robots (fly flew will fly) airplanes in 2064.
- 2. I (won't live lived lives) on Mars one day.
- 3. She (travels will travel travelled) on a ship next winter.
- 4. What (do will is) you do next weekend?
- 5. People (use will use used) flying cars in the future.
- 6. Will Mazen study English tomorrow? No , he (will won't don't) .
- 7. (Are Will Were) humans live on another planet one day?
- 8. How will you (use used uses) English in the future?
- 9. What (does -will are) you do when you're an adult?
- 10. People will travel to Mars for vacation in (2010 2052 2015).
- 11. My parents won't buy a self-driving car (last next another) year.
- 12. Airplanes will use solar energy in the (past present future).
- 13. Tomorrow the weather (is will been will be was) fine.
- 14. We (buy will buy bought) tickets for the play next Friday.
- 15. You (needs will need needed) your umbrella tomorrow.
- 16. Mona (visited will visit visit) her aunt tomorrow.
- 17. Adel (goes will go - went) to Beni-suef next month .
- 18. She (won't didn't doesn't) help us tomorrow .
- 19. (Do Will -Did) Nader go to the pyramids next Monday?
- 20. I (is will be was) ten next year,

Extra challenge!

Can you write the contractions? Follow the example. SB

| 1. I will = I'll | 4. They will = |
|------------------|-------------------|
| | 5. She will = |
| 3. He will = | 6. You will not = |

2

Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم

We use comma (,) to join two ideas in a sentence.

تستخدم القاصلة السفلية لربط فكرتين بالجملة.

- ✓ Yes , I will go to school.
- ✓ Soha is clever, active and cute.
- We use apostrophe (') for contraction of a word.

نستخدم الفاصلة العلوية في الاختصارات.

- ✓ I'll / He's / She doesn't
- We use exclamation (!) mark to show strong feelings . نستخدم علامة التعجب للتعبير عن الإعجاب .
 - ✓ What a nice day! / Fantastic!
- We use question mark (?) at the end of a question. نستخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السزال / الاستفهام .
 - √ Can you help me?
 - ✓ Where do you live?

We use a period (.) at the end of a sentence.

نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة الخبرية او الامر.

- √ No, I can't speak French.
- ✓ Ola is my friend.
- Read the following extract from a podcast about future
 jobs in technology.
- → Underline the comma (,) in red
- → Underline the apostrophe (') in blue
- → Underline the question mark (?) in orace
- → Underline the period (.) in green

'The world is changing and changing fast, but what does that mean for your life, education and career? Hello and welcome to the podcast Life on Future Earth. I'm your host, and today we'll be talking about three tech jobs that people will do in the future.'

Match the punctuation marks to what they do

| 1 , | a at the end of a sentence. |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| - 7- | b. for contraction of a word. |
| 3 7 | c. joins two ideas in a sentence. |
| 1.1 | d at the end of a question. |

Tip! pre- = before Ja

Pre-history قبل التاريخ prepay الدفع مندماً prepay قبل التاريخ prepay الدفع مندماً prepay الدفع مندماً prepay قبل التاريخ prepay قبل prepay in prepay

preview prepay pre-school
Can you find any other words which start in this way?

Practice exercises

I. Write the missing punctuation in these sentences

- 1. We want to visit Aswan this year but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo.
- 2. The government will build three bridges in Alexandria Cairo and Suez.
- 3. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship tomorrow.
- 4. Have you ever been to the Valley of the Kings
- 5. It really was an interesting video

- 6. We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. They are amazing
- 1. are you cold
- 2. what s this
- Z. What's uns
- 3. is it a ruler
- 4. Fine thank you
- 5. do you like english

6. she s short, she isn t tall.

CAN THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER

jobs Earth host

The world is changing and changing fast, but what does that mean for your life, education and career? Hello andto the codcast Life on Future Earth. I'm your, and today we'll be calking about three techthat people will do in the future.

welcome

1. Read the following pas I = , then answer the questions :

Mr John and his wife Sara came from London with their three children Marco. Christina and Maro last winter. They were all neerested in visiting ancient monuments in Egypt. Their elder son, Marco is fifteen years old and Maro is ten years and their sister is 12 years old. They spent fourteen days in Egypt in a five Start Hotel. The family enjoyed the fine warm and sunny weather. They visited the Egyptian Museum, the Pyramids, the Sphinx, Luxor and Aswan. They wought beautiful presents for their relatives and returned home very happy.

Answer the following questions:

- 1. What's the nationality of the family?
- 2. How many persons are there in the family?

`Choose the correct answer:

- The family visited Egypt in (December April June September).
- The family stayed in Egypt for (three four two five) weeks.

Lesson 3

TECH JOBS OF THE FUTURE

وظانف تكنولوجية في المستقبل

- What kind of tech jobs do people do now?
- What kind of tech jobs will people do in the future?

وظائف تكنولوجية Tech jobs







Design spacecraft
Design smart phones
Design large machines

يصمم سفن فضاء يصمم الهواتف الذكية يصمم اللآت الضخمة



build underwater cities build cities in space سفر الي الفضاء ني مدن تحت الماء سي مدن في الفضاء

Did you know?

There are more than a billion web pages on the internet.

Definitions

| tech | (1) | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| | Short for technology. | تكثولوجيا |
| UX | Short for User Experience. | تجربة المستخدم |
| VR | | الواقع الافتراضي |
| ad | Short for advertisement. | اعلان |
| link | a connection between documents | |
| | Internet. | ر ابط |
| robot | machine used to perform jobs aut | omatically. |
| | | انسان ألي |
| look up | Search the meaning of a word in d | ictionary. |
| | المة في قاموس | يبحث عن معني ا |
| browser | computer program help you to rea | nd |
| | information on the Internet. | متصفح |
| specific | a particular thing | محدد |
| Search engine | A website used for searching data. | |

Pay attention

User Experience Designers (UX Designer): create a positive experience between the user and the technology. They make sure that your websites, apps and smart machines are safe and easy to use.

VR Developers: create a new visual world you see when you play a virtual reality game and wear a special headset. Museums will use these VR headsets so that you can experience walking around an ancient building or city.

Robotics engineers: design autonomous machines. We will use autonomous to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. They will build new automobiles and high-speed trains. We will use them in agriculture and manufacturing, too.





Practice Exercises

- 1. Choose the correct answer:
- 1. You should use the (child / school / safe) search option in your browser.
- 2. There are special search engines for (school / teachers / children).
- 3. You will see the ads (first / in the middle / last). Ignore them!
- 4. Choose the (first / best / last) option in the search box.
- 5. To get the best search results, use (short / long /specific) words.

2. Fill in the space with words from the list:

| VR | UX ad robot link tech |
|---|--|
| 1 2 4 1 0 0 M 2 4 4 M A 4 5 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 | Short for User Experience. |
| 400 000 000 000 000 0000 | a connection between documents on the Internet . |
| ************* | Short for technology. |
| | Short for advertisement. |
| ****************** | Short for virtual reality. |

3. Fill in the space with words from the list:

underwater spacecraft jobs machines

Adel : What kind of tech jobs do people do now?

Adel : What else?

Heba : They design large

Adel : What kind of tech jobs do people do in the future?

Heba: They will buildcities

4. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It's a good thing to have a pen-friend in a foreign country. My brother Samir has a pen-friend in England. My brother got his pen-friend's name and address from the internet. His name is Jones and he lives in London He is 15 years old and he is a pupil at a prep school. Football is his favourite sport. He hopes to play for Arsenal team. His favourite subject



is Maths. He is poor at History. He heard a lot about Egypt and the treasures of the ancient Egyptians. He hopes to visit Egypt. He always asks me to send him post cards for Egypt.

| A) Answer | the | following | questions: |
|-----------|-----|-----------|------------|
|-----------|-----|-----------|------------|

- 1. What Jones's favourite subject?
- 2. Where does Jones live?

B) Choose the correct answer:

- 3. Jones is poor at (Maths English History Arabic) .
- 4. Jones asks me to send him (letters post cards books e-mails) about Egypt.
- 5. Punctuate the following sentences:
- 1. 1. i usually use safe browser on the internet
- 2. 2. hend hopes to be a robotic engineer

5. Read and match the right definitions:

| A | В |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. VR Developers | make sure that your apps and smart |
| 2. User Experience Designers | machines are safe and easy to use. |
| | design autonomous machines. |
| 3. Robotics engineers | create a new visual world. |

Lesson 4

PASSWORDS AND PASSPHRASES

كلمات وعبارات المرور (السر)

How to Create Strong Passwords and Passphrases
First of all ...

Don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses.

لا تستخدم معلومات شخصية مثل الاسماء وايام الميلاد وارقام الهاتف او العناويين.

Don't use easy or obvious words, like Password or Computer, or series of numbers, like 1234.

. 1234 مثل مثل كلمة المرور او الحاسب او ارقام بالتسلسل مثل كلمة المرور العاسب او ارقام بالتسلسل مثل 1234 كلمة المرور العاسب العامل المثل 1234 كلمة المرور العامل المثل المثل

لا تستخدم اقل من عشرة رموز .

Don't use the same password for different accounts.

And don't tell your friends your passwords.

لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور لحسابات مختلفة ولا تخبر اصدقاءك بكلمات مرورك .

انشاء عبارة مرور Create a passphrase

(Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.)

- 1. Choose four different words that you can remember: mouse ferry amazing football
- 2. Add spaces to make it stronger: mouse ferry amazing football
- 3. Use some capital letters: mouse FERRY amazing football

Create a personal password code

- 1. Think of your favorite color: green
- 2. Add a number: green87
- 3. Add your favorite school subject: green87science
- 4. Add a symbol: green87\$science

Cleated ados of the

- 1. Think of a sentence that means something for you: My beautiful pet cat is named Bes
- 2. Use the first letter of each word: MbpcinB
- 3. Add numbers and characters you can remember: MbpcinB*49&

Practice Exercises

" Succession shows almost bised.

- 1. Using strong password to be (bad save safe saving) is important.
- Don't use (easy difficult fat thin) or obvious words for a password.
- 3. Don't use (more less bigger longer) than 10 characters.
- 4. Is it important to create (strong weak easy short) passwords.
- 5. Don't use the (most least- same more) password for different accounts.
- 6. Don't (say call tell see) your friends your passwords.
- 7. Personal information is (unimportant difficult important bad).

A second the second of the sec

- 1. your tell <u>Don't</u> friends passwords your.
- 2. important to passwords is- strong create- <u>It</u>.
- II. do use passwords When you.?
- 4. use information <u>Don't</u> personal like or addresses.
- 5. use same different Don't password the for accounts.

THE DESIGNATION OF THE OPERATIONS

Ahmed Zewail was born in 1946 in Egypt where he grew up. He went to Alexandria University . He finished his studies in the United States in 1974 . After this , Dr Zewail worked at the University of California . In 1976 , he became a professor_ at the California Institute of Technology. In 1998 , Dr Zewail won the Benjamin Franklin Medal because he discovered the femto-second , which is one millionth of one billionth of a second . Many scientists , students and important people came to the ceremony and saw him receive his prize . One year later , Dr Zewail got the Nobile Prize for Chemistry . He now lives in California and his four children . His wife , Dema Zewail is a doctor . He helps scientists to make new medicines.

| A. / | Answer | the | followin | g d | uestion: |
|------|--------|-----|----------|-----|----------|
|------|--------|-----|----------|-----|----------|

- 1- Which university did Or Zewail go to?
- 2- Why did Dr Zewail win the Benjamin Franklin Medal?
- 3- When did Dr Zewail get the Nobel Prize?
- B. Choose the correct answer:

| Illined militarits | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| A | В |
| 1. Don't use personal | a. Password for many accounts. |
| 2. Don't use the same | b. Anyone your passwords. |
| 3. Don't tell | c. information like names. |

| | | The same of the sa | Acres de la constitución de la c |
|---|-----------|--|--|
| - | - ALC | | |
| | | | |

| | Passwords and passphrases name – personal – clear – character – friends |
|-----------------------|---|
| ********************* | |





Lessons 5 & 6

| Norm vurculouli | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------|------------------|
| container ship | سفينة حاويات | | ا مریح |
| go along | يمر بمحاذاة | look out of | بنظر من خلال |
| travel past | يسافر عبر | wave | ياوع |
| wait for | ينتظر (شخص / شي) | laugh | بضحك |
| go through | نهر عبر | clothes | ملايس |
| straight | | a fun job | وظيفة ممتعة |
| on the ship | علي مثن السفينة | Suez Canal | قَتْادُ الْمنويس |
| ship's captain | | Eco-friendly | صديق للبينة |

A fun job!

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big.

'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain!' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job.'

Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.

One day, Heba's father said, 'My friend, Amr, works on a container ship. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and wave at him'

Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

'Where is the ship going?' asked Heba.

'You can ask Amr next week,' answered her father. 'He will come and visit us then.'

When Amr came to visit Heba, she had a long list of questions to ask him. He laughed and agreed to answer them all.









'I was on the ship when it went through the canal,' he said. 'Then I came back onto the land, and the ship went to France. It came from China. There were lots of toys and clothes in the containers.'

'Is it fun on the ship?' asked Heba.

'It's very hard work!' answered Amr. 'The captain has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The ship has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is windy. Would you like to come and visit a ship one day?'

'Oh, yes please!' answered Heba.



1. Where does Heba live?



| 2. | What does Heba think about a ship captain's job at the start of the story? |
|----|--|
| 3. | What does Heba learn about a ship captain's job at the end of the story? |
| 4. | What is in the containers on Amr's ship? |

WRITING HOW TO WRITE A PARAGRAPH

What do you have to do to write a paragraph?
Put the steps in order 1-6

- a. Write the main information of the paragraph.
- b. Do research to find out facts about the topic.
- c. Write a conclusion sentence.
- d. Write an introduction sentence.
- e. Brainstorm some ideas.
- f. Put your ideas in order.





Read this question. Work in groups. Brainstorm some ideas about it

Write a paragraph about the following question: How can people transport natural resources across a desert? Include ways that are environmentally-friendly. Use at least 50 words.

Tip!

Environmentally-friendly ways are ways that don't harm the environment. طرق صديقة البيئة لا تضربها

7. Exchange paragraphs with your classmates. Did you have the same ideas?

Writing tip!

Remember to start your paragraph with an introduction sentence and end it with a conclusion sentence.

رجال عمال شباب The Young Entrepreneurs

An entrepreneur is someone who starts a new business. In this project, you are going to work with a group of classmates and start their own business. First, you need to decide what goods you will sell, or what services you will offer. Then, you have to decide where you will sell your goods or offer your services. Finally, you will make a poster to help explain your business plan.

Practice Exercises

| ships | container | friends | boat | |
|---|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----|
| Heba loved v | vatching the ships. | She often watched | them with her | |
| ##* ### *** *** | She liked to thi | nk about where the | Са | me |
| from. One day, | Heba's father said, | 'My friend, Amr, w | orks on a | |
| | ship. He will tra | vel past our house | today. Let's go a | nd |
| wave at him' | | | | |

lestions:

Some students think that the day they leave school is the end of their education and they throw away their books saying joyfully: "Goodbye to all that". This is quite wrong, for when they leave school, they enter another school called "the school of life".

There, we continue learning the lessons of life until the day of our death. What we learn in the school of life is even more difficult than what

we learn from our books in the classroom.

We have to learn how to overcome hardships, how to understand our responsibilities and carry out our duties as good citizens and how to depend on ourselves.

There are no parents or teachers except life itself to help and guide us. The work of the classroom is only a preparation for this new kind of learning. It is true to say that the day when a student leaves school is the beginning rather than the end of his education.

A. Answer the following question:

- 1- What does, a student learn in "the school of life"?
- 2- How do some students feel on leaving school?
- 3. Why is going to school useful?
- B. Choose the correct answer:
- 4- "School of life" means
 - a) learning from school
- b) learning from books
- c) learning from our experience
 - d) learning from our parents
- 5- What we learn in the school of life is even more.......
 - a) easy
- b) difficult
- c) moderate
- d) cool

1. his favourite city is matrouh

2. we ll finish our english course next monday

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over a or short distances.

First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships reslowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes faster than ships so travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transport.

Freight trains can travel across the country and the trucks can travel.

from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

Finally, different forms of transportations are used for transporting different goods. The transportation we use depend on the product, the time available and the distance.

Circle T (True) or F (False)

| 1. Large ships and ferries can't travel far . | T/F |
|---|-----|
| 2. Large ships are good for transporting automobiles. | |
| 3. Airplanes aren't as fast as large ships. | T/F |
| 4. Airplanes are good for carrying fresh food products. | T/F |
| 5. Oil, natural gas and water are usually transported by truck. | T/F |
| 6. Transportation are chosen according to time, distance and t | T/F |

Project

- What is the name of your business?
- What is your product or service?
- Why do people need it?

product.

- · Will you need to transport your goods?
- Will you need to use transportation to get to work?
- What kind of transportation will you use?
- Is it good for the environment?
- Any other information?

Model exam on unit 6

A. Listening

- 1. The first train line in Egypt opened in.......
 - a. 1844
- b. 1855
- c. 1854

T/F

- 2. The train traveled from to Alexandria.
 - a. Luxor
- b. Giza
- c. Aswan
- d. Cairo
- 3. The Suez is now 193 kilometers long.
 - a. Canal
- b. River
- c. Ocean
- d. Lake

- 4. It was started in and it took ten years to finish it.
 - a. 1959
- b. 1899
- c. 1959
- d. 1855

- 1. Heba looked out of the
- 2. The ships were going along theCanal.
- 3. The ships were so
- 4. It must be so fun to be a ship's

B. Reading

underwater- spacecraft - jobs - machines

Adel : What kind of tech jobs do people do now?

Heba: They design

Adel : What else?

Heba: They design large

Adel : What kind of tech jobs do people do in the future?

Heba: They will buildcitles

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When we do sport, our bodies use more energy and more food than when we watch TV to be healthy. The quantity of food that we eat should be the same as energy which our bodies use. Calories tell us how much energy there is in different food. If we eat food with too many calories in, then we will start to put on weight.

- A) Answer the following questions:
- 1. What do calories tell us ?
- 2. What does food give us?
- B) Choose the correct answer:
- 3. We put on (height high length weight) if we eat too many calories.
- 4. Our bodies use (more little less few) energy when we do sport.

The Reader

- 1. Grandfather was sad at the end.
- 2. People came to learn Khayameya many places in Egypt. (



| B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------|------------------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| 3. Grandfather said | | | | | | | |
| 3. Grandfather said to the visitors. a. sorry b. excuse me c. welcome d. goodbye | | | | | | | |
| 4 Decel | b. excuse n | ne c. welcome | d. goodbye | | | | |
| 4. People want to le | arn | | | | | | |
| a. Khayameya | b. Math | c. Science | d. Art | | | | |
| \$ TO | W | riting | _ | | | | |
| 11111 | 111 | | | | | | |
| 1. Don't use | th | an 10 characters | | | | | |
| a. more | h. less | c bigger | | | | | |
| 2 Robots | airnl: | anes in 2044 | d. longer | | | | |
| 4 Hy | D. flew | C veill flag | | | | | |
| 3. She | heln us t | OMORNOUS OF | d. flying | | | | |
| a. won't | h didn't | . WOLIOITIO | | | | | |
| 4. What | Von de | c. don't | d. doesn't | | | | |
| 4. Whata. does | b is | when you're an a | idult? | | | | |
| ESO ESTABLE | D. 12 C. | are | d. will | | | | |
| 1. Vour - tell - Don't Stier 1 | | | | | | | |
| 1. your - tell - Don't - friends - passwords - your. | | | | | | | |
| de na black tak dan den aban kan da hara na bana da ba | | | | | | | |
| 3. do - use - passwords - When- you.? | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | ***************** | | | | | | |
| × 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 | | | | | | | |
| Guiding words: name - personal - clear - character - friends | | | | | | | |
| dutuing words: nan | 1e – nersona | - claam about | ** | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| - Friends | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Tickowine to the Control of the Cont | | | | | | | |
| Listening text of the model exam | | | | | | | |

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

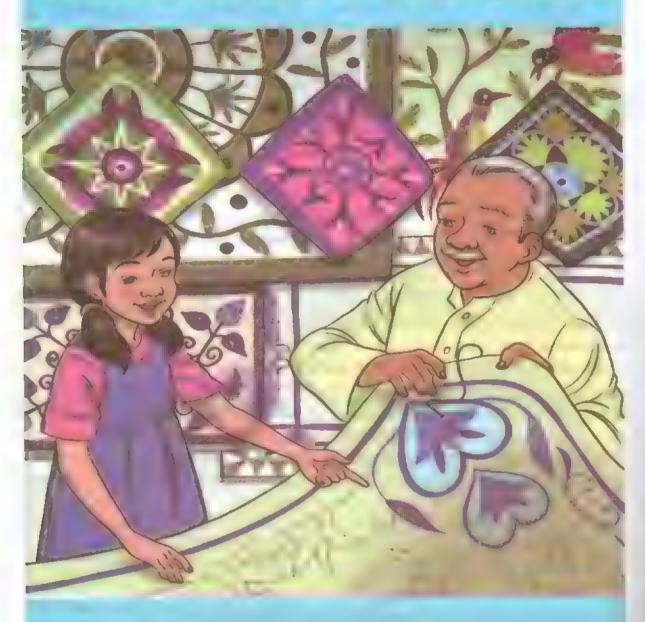
The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria. The Suez Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.

2. Listen and complete:

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain!' thought Heba.

Story Hi! Series Primary 4

MHAVAMEVA SUMMER



TOURS OF THE SECTION SECTIONS OF THE SECTION S

صيف الخيامية

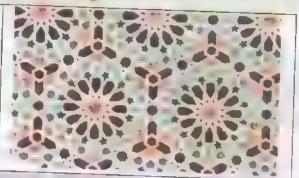
Picture dictionary



artisan

Some artisans make tables and chairs from wood.

يصنع يعض الحرفيين الموابد والكراسي من الخشب.



geometric pattern

We can sometimes see a geometric pattern of colorful tiles.

ومكننا أحداثا أن نرى قماش ذو شكل هندسي ملون.



lotus flower

Lotus flowers grow on rivers and lakes,

تتمو زهور اللويس على الانهار والبحيرات.



طبقة Layer

There are 3 layers of cream in this cake,

توجد ثلاثة طبقات من الكريم في هذه الكيكة.



sew پنیط

My grandmother can sew her own clothes.

تستطيع جدتي أن تخبط ملابسها.



stitch غرزة

I need 4 stitches to fix this button.

احتاج أربعة عرز لتثبيت هذاالزرار.



Page 110 , 111 Page 110

Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday.

Zeinab said, 'Let's go visit Grandpa!'

شعرت زينب بالضجر. كان الأسبوع الثاني من العطلة الصيفية. قالت زينب ، "للذهب لزيارة جدى!"

Her mother said, 'Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him.'

قالت والدتها ، "نعم ، إنه حزين في الوقت الحالي. أعتقد أنه يمكنك مساعدته.



Page 111



Zeinab got off the train. There was her grandfather and grandmother! Her grandparents were very pleased to see her.

نزلت زينب من القطار. كان هناك جدها وجدتها! كان أجدادها سعداء للغاية برؤيتها.

After tea, Grandpa said, 'My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew. I think I will have to stop making thinas.'

بعد تثاول الشاي ، قال الجد ، "عيناي ليستا جيدتين الآن. من الصعب العمل، لا أستطيع أن أرى الخياطة. أعتقد أنه سيتعين على التوقف عن صنع الأشياء ".



Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.

Zeinab said, 'Oh no! You can't stop! You make such beautiful things!'

كان الجد أحد صائعي الخيام. كان من أمهر الحرفيين في شارع الخيامية. فثت زينب: "أوه لا! لا يمكنك التوقف! أنت تصنع مثل هذه الأشياء الجميلة!

| A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR | scen in | |
|--|-----------|--|
| | | The state of the state of the state of |
| the same of the sa | - 1 A A A | And the second party is not the second |
| 1 Zainah was await. | A 2 | |

| Li Zeiliab was ex | cited in the sec | cond week of the s | ummer holiday. | |
|--|------------------|--|-----------------|--|
| | | | () | |
| 2. Zeinab wanted to visit Grandfather. | | () | | |
| 3. Grandfather was happy as Mom said. | | | () | |
| 4. Zeinab went to Grandfather by train. | | | () | |
| | | pleased when they | () | |
| 6. Grandfather's | eyes were ver | v good. | | |
| | | maker. He's an eng | () | |
| | | | ineer. () | |
| 1. Zeinab was | in the se | cond week of the | Summer holiday | |
| a. bored | b. happy | c. pleased | d. glad | |
| 2. Zeinab wanted | to visit her | PP004D41414545545EEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEE | | |
| | | er c. father | d. sister | |
| 3. Grandfatheras Mom said. | | | | |
| a. bad | b. happy | c. pleased | d. sad | |
| 4. Zeinab went to Grandfather by | | | | |
| a. plane | b. taxi | | d. bus | |
| 5. Zeinab's grand | parents were . | whe | n they saw her. | |
| a. bored | b. sad | c. pleased | d. nervous | |
| 6. Grandfather's | | weren't very good | | |
| a. eyes | | c. neck | d. hands | |
| 7. Grandfather's jo | ob was a/an | ************************************** | | |
| a. engineer | | c. architect | d. farmer | |
| 8. Grandfather is a maker. | | | | |
| a. car | b. toy | c. shoe | d. tent | |
| NUMBER OF THE PARTY OF THE PART | | | | |

Page 112, 113 Page 112

Zeinab and her grandfather visited the زارت زينب وجدها المحل. shop.

Zeinab said, 'Oh look! I love this big picture with all the flowers! Did you make it, Grandpa?

قَالَتُ رُبِنْبِ: أوه انظر ! أحب هذه الصورة الكبيرة مع كل الزهور! هل صنعتها با جدى؟

Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand,' said Grandpa. 'All by hand? That's amazing!'



العم ، نقد أستعرق الامر ما يقرب من اربعه أشهر. إنه ا مصنوعة من الاف و آلاف من الغر (الصغيرة. " قال جدى "القد قمت بقياس كل القطع وقطعها باليد". "كل شيء باليد؟ هذا مذهل!"

Page 113

'What's your favorite design Grandpa?' asked Zeinab.

سالت زينب "ما هو تصميمك المفضل ؟"،

I like sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me.'

"أحب خياطة رهور اللوتس الاشكال الهندسية بشكل أفضل، كما أنثى أحب خياطة الطيور لقد استخدمت أفضل خياطة للاشكال ، لكن عيني ليست جيدة الآن. إنه لأمر محزن والنسبة لي

I wish I could sew and help you,' said Zeinab.

دت زينب: "أنمنى لو أستطيع الخياطة ومساعدتك".

Her grandfather smiled. 'I can teach you. Do you want to learn?'

ـــم جدها. اأستطيع تعليمك، هل تريد أن تتعلم؟!

'Oh, yes please!' said Zeinab. "إَوْهُ ، نَعْمُ مِنْ فَصَلِكَ!"



Page 114, 115 Page 114

Zeinab asked, 'How did you learn to sew. Grandpa?'

وسالت زينب "كيف تطمت الخياطة يا جدى؟"

'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that! I became a Khavameva artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa.



"علمتي والدي. عندما كنت طفلاً ، أردت أن أصبح مهندًسنا أو مدرسنا ، لكنتي غيرت رأيي عَلمتي والدي الخياطة. جدى علم والدى قبل ذلك! لقد أصبحت حرفيًا في الخيامية ، وأحب عملي ، " أجاب الجد

Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math! And now you are my teacher, too.

قالت زينب: "أنت تصمم وتقيس الاشكال. أنت تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس وفنان وجيد في الرياضيات! وأنت الآن أستاذي أيضًا. "

Page 115

Zeinab said, 'Grandpa, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too.

قالت زينب: "جدي لدي فكرة اصدقائي أذكياء جدا أعتقد أنهم يريدون التعرف على الخيامية أيضارا

Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She

makes beautiful things.

"رشا بارعة في الرياضيات وحل المسائل لبني تخترع الأشياء طوال الوقت ولديها أفكار جيدة. تصنع ضحي فنًا رالغًا ويمكن أن تمناعدك إنجى في أن توضح لنا جميعًا كيفية الخياطة. إنها تصنع أشياء جميلة.

الماندعوهم! '! Let's call them!



| A. Read and write I | True or E traise | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------|-----|----|
| 1. Grandpa's moth | er taught Grand | pa to sew. | | |) |
| 2. Grandpa loved his job. | | | | | |
| 3. Grandfather was | | er of sawing | | |) |
| 4. Zeinab thought h | | | | (|) |
| | | | neya. | (|) |
| 5. Rasha was great | | | | (|) |
| 6. Lobna was good | | ngs. | | (|) |
| 7. Doha made amaz | | | | (|) |
| 8. Engy helped then | n showed how t | o play. | | (|) |
| | wanter the being done to | . Assessment | | | |
| 1. Grandpa's | taught | Grandpa to sew | | | |
| | | c. father | d. sist | ter | |
| 2. Grandpa | hisjob. | | | | |
| a. loved | | c. disliked | d. left | | |
| 3w | as Zeinab's teac | her of sewing. | | | |
| | b. Grandfather | | d. sist | | |
| 4. Zeinab thought he | erv | vanted to learn | Khayar | ney | a. |
| a. mother | b. brother | c. father | d. frie | | |
| 5. Rasha was great a | it | 1 hogi | | | |
| a. English | b. history | c. art | d. math | | |
| 6. Lobna was good a | t | things. | | | |
| a. cutting | b. drawing | c. inventing | d. baking | | |
| 7. Doha made amazi | ng | ********* | | | |
| a. English | b. history | c. art | d. mat | h | |
| 3. Engy helped them | how to | PARTUURA A | | | |
| a. sew | b. read | c. write | d. sho | ut | |

Page 116, 117 Page 116

Zeinab's friends arrived.

ومئل أصنقام زينب

'We're here! Let's learn something new.'

انحن هناإ دعونا نتطم شيئا جديدًا.

Grandfather said, Welcome girls. Thank you for coming! We make the patterns with three layers of cotton and put them together like this'

قَالَ الجد ، المرحيا بالفتيات، شكرا تقدومانن! نصنع الاشكال بثلاث طبقات من القطن وتجمعها معا هكذا



Page 117



Grandfather said, 'Zeinab you have such clever friends! What a good idea!' Rasha answered, We like learning new things, and we have a great teacher!'

قال الجد ء ١١ لديك أصدقاء انكياء يا زينب! أجابت رشا: يا لها من فكرة جيدة! "نحب تطم أشياء جديدة ، ولدينا مطم راتع!"

1. Zeinab's friends arrived at Grandfather. 2. Four layers of cotton did they make the patterns. 3. Grandfather was Zeinab's friends great teacher. 1. Zeinab's..... arrived at Grandfather. b. friends c. parents d. sisters a. teachers 2. There were..... layers of cotton in the patterns. c. three d. four b. two a. one 3.was Zeinab's friends great teacher. d. Grandfather b. father c. brother a. mother

Page 118, 119

Page 118

Other people came to watch. أتى أتاس آخرون ليشاهدوا.

They said, 'That looks fun. Can we trv?'

قَالُوا ، "بيدو هذا ممتعًا. هل يمكننا المحاولة؟ Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome! Com j and join us!' قَالَ حِدْ رَيْنِبِ: أَهَلاَّ بِكُمِ! تَعَالُوا واتضموا إلينا! "





Grandpa said, 'Zeinab, look at all these people! They all want to learn about Khayameya! I'm so happy!'

قال الجد ، "زيلب ، الظرى إلى كل هؤلاء الناس! كلهم يريدون التعرف على خيامية! أمَّا سعيد للغاية!"

hither to resely your or Page 119 Edd miss of stuck signed.

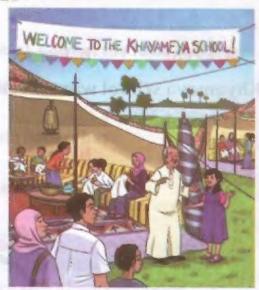
Zeinab said, 'Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them.

فَلْتَ زِينْبِ ، "الكثير من الناس يريدون التعلم أيضًا. التاس في الحديد من الأملكن في جميع أنحاء مصر يريدونك أن تعلمهم.

Khayameya School is traveling all summer! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh! What a wonderful summer holiday! Thank you, Grandpa!'

تسافر مدرسة الخيامية طوال الصيف! بعد ذلك نذهب إلى الإسماعيلية ثم طنطا ومرسى مطروح! يا لها من عطلة صيفية رانعة! شكرا لك يا جدى!"

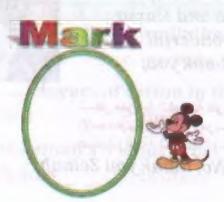
Grandpa laughed, 'No, thank you Zeinab!'



ضحك الجد ، "لا ، شكرا لك زينب!"



| A. Read and write T | True) or F (False | 1: | | | |
|--|---|-----------------|----------|-------|------|
| 1. Grandfather said welcome to the visitors. | | | | (|) |
| 2. People wanted to | o learn Khayam | eya. | | (|) |
| 3. Grandfather was | sad at the end. | | | (|) |
| 4. People came to l | earn Khayamey | a many places i | n Egypt. | - |) |
| 5. Khyameya schoo | | | 831 | (| , |
| B. Choose the correct | answer from a, b | , c, or d; | | TI TO | |
| 1. Grandfather said | | to the visit | ors. | | No. |
| a. sorry | b. excuse me | c. welcome | d. go | odb | ye |
| 2. People want to le | earn | | | | |
| a. Khayameya | b. Math | c. Science | d. Art | | |
| 3. Grandfather was | *************************************** | at the end. | | | |
| a. sad | b. unhappy | c. sorry | d. haj | ру | |
| 4. People came to le | earn Khayamaya | from many pla | ces aro | und | TOX |
| ************************************** | | | Dall hos | | |
| a. Egypt | b. France | c. England | d. Ital | y | |
| 5. Khyameya schoo | l was travelling | to, T | anta and | d Ma | arsa |
| Matrouh. | | | | | |
| a. Sinai | b. Luxor | c. Ismailia | d. Asv | van | |





Look and write

Doha Engy Grandma Grandpa Mom Lobna Rasha Zeinab

















2

Read and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences

1 Grandpa is sad because he can't hear well now.

Zeinab likes the Khayameya design with flowers best.

3 Grandpa always wanted to be an artisan.

Rasha makes amazing art.

- 5 To make Kayameya, you need a pattern with 3 layers of cotton.
- ry mile
- 6 The Khayameya school is going to Aswan and Port Said.



Look and number

- I think I will have to stop making things.
- Zeinab, look at all these people! They all want to learn about Khayameya! I'm so happy!
- I wish I could sew and help you.

- Let's go visit Grandpa!
- l measured and cut all the pieces by hand.
- My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too.













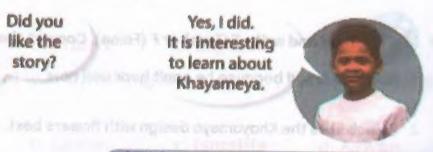


Did you like the story? Why? Ask and answer



Did you like the story?

Yes, I did. it is interesting to learn about Khayameya,





After the summer. Zeinab writes an email to her grandfather. Complete her email

Hi Grandpa,

Thank you for a wonderful summer holiday!

Remember to say:

- what you enjoyed.
- what you learned.
- what you want to do in the next holiday.

See you soon. Zeinab